# On logarithmic plurigenera of algebraic plane curves (the fourth version)

# Shigeru Iitaka, Gakushuin University, Tokyo,JAPAN

## May 20, 2011

## Contents

1	Introduction	3
2	minimal models of pairs  2.1 birational transformations between pairs	4 4 5 6
3	Elementary transformations 3.1 $I_{+}(p,\nu_{1}), I_{-}(p,\nu_{1})$	7 7 9 11
4	logarithmic plurigenera4.1nef divisors4.2formula for plurigenera4.3Formula I4.4mixed plurigenera4.5estimates for bigenera	11 11 14 15 17
5	relations between $A$ and $\alpha$	<b>2</b> 1
6	relations between $\Omega$ and $\omega$ 6.1 Case $\nu_1 \leq 3$	24 24 27

7	curv	ves with $Z^2 = 1$	28
	7.1	case $g = 2, 3 \dots \dots$	29
	7.2	case $g = 1 \dots \dots \dots$	29
	7.3	Formula II	30
	7.4	sharper estimate	31
	7.5	case $D^2 = -2, -3, -4$	32
8	curv	ves with $Z^2 = 2$	35
	8.1	case $g = 2, 3, 4$	35
	8.2	case $q=1$	36
	8.3	case $D^2 = -3$	37
		8.3.1 case $\eta = 0$	40
	8.4	case $D^2 = -4$	$\overline{43}$
	_	8.4.1 case $\eta \neq 0$	43
		8.4.2 case $\eta = 0$	44
	8.5	case $D^2 = -5$	45
	8.6	case $D^2 = -6$	46
9	Cury	ves with $Z^2 = 3$	46
	Cui	9.0.1 A) case $\nu_1 \geq 3$	47
	9.1	case $D^2 = 4g - 8$	49
	0.1	9.1.1 case $\eta = 0 \dots \dots \dots \dots$	49
		9.1.2 case $\eta \neq 0$	50
	9.2	case $D^2 = 4g - 9$	51
	9.3	case $D^2 = 4g - 10$	51
	0.0	9.3.1 B) case $\nu_1 \leq 2 \dots \dots \dots \dots$	52
10	curv	ves with $P_{2,1}[D] = 1$	53
11	curs	ves with $P_{2,1}[D] = 2$	<b>54</b>
	11 1	case $D^2 = 6 \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$	55
		case $D^2 = 5$	56
	11.2		00
<b>12</b>	curv	29±L J	57
		12.0.1 A) case $\nu_1 \geq 3$	58
	12.1	case $D^2 = 4g - 8$	60
		12.1.1 case $\eta = 0 \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$	60
		12.1.2 case $\eta \neq 0$	61
		case $D^2 = 4g - 9$	61
	12.3	case $D^2 = 4a - 10$	62

	12.3.1 B) case $\nu_1 \le 2$	63
13	curves with $Q=1,2$ 13.1 Formula II'	<b>64</b> 66
<b>14</b>	rational curves	67
15	logarithmic plurigenera 15.1 invariant $P_{3,1}[D]$	<b>69</b> 71
<b>16</b>	curves with $P_2[D] = 2$	<b>72</b>
	16.1 case $\beta = 5$	73 73 74
	16.1.2 case $\gamma = 0$	76 76
	16.4 case $\beta = 8$	77 77
17	rational curves with $Q = 1,2$	78
18	inequalities between $\mathbb{Z}^2$ and $\mathbb{D}^2$	79
	18.1 curves parametrized by polynomials	80 82
19	curves with $P_2[D] = 3$	82
	19.1 case $\beta = 6$	85 90
	19.1.2 case $p = 0$	91 93 95
	19.3 case $\beta = 8$	97 98
	19.4 case $\beta = 9$	98
20	I	. <b>00</b> 100
	20.1 examples	101
	$20.4 \text{ case } p = 0 \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots \dots$	

	$20.6 \text{ case } \psi = 2 \dots \dots$
	20.7 case $\eta = 0 \dots \dots$
	20.8 classification by $P_{3,1}[D]$
21	relations between $Z^2$ and $D^2$
	21.1 Case $\nu_1 \le 2 \dots 110$
	21.2 Case $\sigma \geq 6$
	21.3 Plane curves with only double points

#### 1 Introduction

Let C be an algebraic curve on the projective plane  $\mathbf{P}^2$ . Let  $P_m[C]$  denote logarithmic m genus of pairs  $(\mathbf{P}^2, C)$ .  $P_1[C]$  turns out to be the genus g of C. These are invariant under Cremona transformations, i.e., birational transformations between the projective plane  $\mathbf{P}^2$  and itself.

To compute logarithmic plurigenera  $P_m[C]$ , one has to construct nonsingular minimal pairs (S, D) which are birationally equivalent to the given  $(\mathbf{P}^2, C)$ . Let Z be  $D+K_S$ . Then  $Z^2, D^2, g$  where g is the genus of the curve D, are birational invariants as pairs. Moreover,  $P_{2,1}[D] = \dim |2K_S + D| + 1$ is called, the (2,1) genus of a nonsingular pair (S,D) Inequalities among these invariants will be established.

The invariant bigenus  $P_2[C]$  is very powerful to characterize algebraic plane curves of certain type, that was first recognized by Coolidge [2]. Actually he showed the next two results in 1928:

- 1) if  $P_2[C] = 0$  then by a Cremona transformation, C is transformed into a line.
- 2) If  $P_2[C] = 1$  then by a Cremona transformation, C is transformed into either a nonsingular cubic or a rational curve of degree 3m with nine m ple points and a double point.

The purpose of this paper is to extend his results. Actually, structure of plane curves C with  $P_2[C] = 2, 3, Z^2 = 0, 1, 2, 3$  or  $P_{2,1}[C] = 1, 2, 3$  will be determined.

## 2 minimal models of pairs

#### 2.1 birational transformations between pairs

Here, we recall basic notions and results in birational geometry of pairs (see [5, Iitaka]). Let C be a curve on a non-singular projective surface S.

Two pairs (S, C) and  $(S_1, C_1)$  are said to be birationally equivalent, if there exists a birational map  $f: S \to S_1$  such that the proper image f[C]of C by f coincides with  $C_1$ . Here the proper image f[C] is, by definition, the closure of the image f(x) of the generic point x of C. When there is no danger of confusion, we say that C is birationally equivalent to  $C_1$  as imbedded curves if two pairs (S, C) and  $(S_1, C_1)$  are birationally equivalent. f is said to be a birational transformation between pairs.

The purpose of birational geometry of pairs is to study properties of pairs (S, C) which are invariant under birational transformations.

A pair (W, D) is said to be non-singular, if both W and D are non-singular. In this case, we have complete linear systems  $|m(D + K_W)|$  for any m > 0, where  $K_W$  indicates a canonical divisor on W. The dimension  $\dim |m(D + K_W)| + 1$  depends on both D and W. But to simplify the notation, we use the symbol  $P_m[D]$  to denote  $\dim |m(D + K_W)| + 1$ . Using this we define the Kodaira dimension  $\kappa[D]$  of (W, D) to be the degree of  $P_m[D]$  as a function in m. It is easy to see that  $P_m[D]$  and  $\kappa[D]$  are birational invariants of (W, D) in the above sense. Hereafter, we shall consider pairs (S, D) in which S is rational. Then  $P_1[D]$  turns out to be the genus of D, denoted by g(D).

A non-singular pair (S, D) is said to be relatively minimal, whenever the intersection number  $D \cdot E \geq 2$  for any exceptional curve (of the first kind) E on S such that  $E \neq D$ . In this case every birational morphism from (S, D) into another non-singular pair  $(S_1, D_1)$  turns out to be isomorphic. Moreover, the pair (S, D) is said to be minimal, if every birational map from any non-singular pair  $(S_1, D_1)$  into (S, D) turns out to be regular. Any relatively minimal pair (S, D) is minimal if  $\kappa[D] = 2$  (see Theorem I in [6]). In this case, the self-intersection number  $D^2$  is a birational invariant. Moreover, if  $\kappa[D] \geq 0$ ,  $D^2$  is also a birational invariant except for the case in which  $\kappa[D] = 0$  and  $P_1[D] = 1$ .

It is well known that given a rational surface S, after contracting all exceptional curves on S successively, we get relatively minimal models of S. Relatively minimal models of rational surfaces are the projective plane  $\mathbf{P}^2$  or  $\mathbf{P}^1 \times \mathbf{P}^1$  or a  $\mathbf{P}^1$  – bundle over  $\mathbf{P}^1$  which has a section  $\Delta_{\infty}$  with negative self intersection number. The last surface is denoted by a symbol  $\Sigma_B$  where

-B denotes the self intersection number  $\Delta_{\infty}^2$  of the section  $\Delta_{\infty}$ . Here, we call  $\Sigma_B$  Hirzebruch surface of degree B after Kodaira.

For simplicity, we let  $\Sigma_0$  denote the product surface  $\mathbf{P}^1 \times \mathbf{P}^1$ . The Picard group of  $\Sigma_B(B \geq 0)$  is generated by the section  $\Delta_{\infty}$  and a fiber  $F_c = \rho^{-1}(c)$  of the  $\mathbf{P}^1$  – bundle, where  $\rho : \Sigma_B \to \mathbf{P}^1$  is the projection.

#### **2.2** curves on $\Sigma_B$

Let C be an irreducible curve on  $\Sigma_B$ . Then there exist integers  $\sigma$  and e such that

$$C \sim \sigma \Delta_{\infty} + eF_c$$
.

We have  $C \cdot F_c = \sigma$  and  $C \cdot \Delta_{\infty} = e - B \cdot \sigma$ . Hereafter, suppose that  $C \neq \Delta_{\infty}$ . Thus  $C \cdot \Delta_{\infty} \geq B$  and hence,  $e \geq \sigma \cdot B$ . If B > 0 then  $\Delta_{\infty}^2 = -B < 0$  and such a section  $\Delta_{\infty}$  is uniquely determined. For a surface  $\Sigma_0 = \mathbf{P}^1 \times \mathbf{P}^1$ , we get  $F_c \sim \mathbf{P}^1 \times \mathbf{P}^1$  point and  $\Delta_{\infty} \sim \mathrm{point} \times \mathbf{P}^1$ . We may assume that  $e \geq \sigma$ . Thus  $\sigma$  and e are uniquely determined for a given curve C on  $\Sigma_B$ .

Letting  $g_0$  be the virtual genus of C and  $K_0$  a canonical divisor on  $\Sigma_B$ , we get

$$2g_0 - 2 = C^2 + K_0 \cdot C$$
  
=  $(\sigma \Delta_{\infty} + eF_c) \cdot ((\sigma - 2)\Delta_{\infty} + (e - B - 2)F_c)$   
=  $B(1 - \sigma)\sigma + 2(e\sigma - e - \sigma)$ .

Hence,

$$g_0 = (e-1)(\sigma - 1) - \frac{B\sigma(\sigma - 1)}{2},$$
$$C^2 = 2e\sigma - \sigma^2 b.$$

Letting  $f = e - B\sigma = C \cdot \Delta_0 \ge 0$ , we obtain

$$C \sim \sigma \Delta_0 + f F_c,$$

$$K_0 \sim -2\Delta_0 - (2-B)F_c,$$

$$Z_0 = C + K_0 \sim (\sigma - 2)\Delta_0 + (f - 2 + B)F_c,$$

where  $\Delta_0$  is an irreducible curve linearly equivalent to  $\Delta_{\infty} + BF_c$ . Thus,

$$g_0 = (f-1)(\sigma-1) + \frac{B\sigma(\sigma-1)}{2} = \frac{(\sigma-1)(B\sigma+2f-2)}{2},$$

$$C^{2} = 2f\sigma + \sigma^{2}B = \sigma(2f + B\sigma),$$

$$C^{2} = \frac{2\sigma}{\sigma - 1}g_{0} + 2\sigma,$$

$$Z_{0}^{2} = \frac{2\sigma - 4}{\sigma - 1}g_{0} + 4 - 2\sigma.$$

#### 2.3 types of pairs

We assume C to be singular. Let  $\nu_1(C)$  denote the highest multiplicity of the singular point of C. We take a singular point  $p_1$  on C with  $\operatorname{mult}_{p_1}(C) = \nu_1(C)$ , that is denoted by  $\nu_1$ . Blowing up at center  $p_1$ , we obtain a surface  $S_1$  and a proper birational morphism  $\mu_1: S_1 \to S_0 = \Sigma_B$ , which satisfies

$$\mu_1^*(C) \sim C_1 + \nu_1 E_1$$

where  $E_1 = \mu_1^{-1}(p_1)$  and  $C_1$  is the proper transform of C by  $\mu_1^{-1}$ . Letting  $K_0$  and  $K_1$  denote canonical divisors of  $S_0 = \Sigma_B$  and  $S_1$ , respectively, we have

$$K_1 \sim \mu_1^*(K_0) + E_1$$
.

In order to simplify the notation, the total inverse images of divisors are denoted by the same symbol. For example, the above relation is denoted by

$$K_1 \sim K_0 + E_1$$
.

Letting  $\nu_2$  denote  $\nu_1(C_1)$  and taking  $p_2$  on  $C_1$  such that  $\operatorname{mult}_{p_2}(C_1) = \nu_2$ , we get a surface  $S_2$  and a birational morphism  $\mu_2: S_2 \to S_1$  which is obtained by blowing up at  $p_2$ . Continuing this process, we obtain a sequence of birational morphisms  $\mu_1, \mu_2, \dots, \mu_r$  such that the composition  $\mu$  of these morphisms gives rise to a minimal resolution of the singularities of the imbedded curve C:

$$W = S_r \xrightarrow{\mu_r} S_{r-1} \xrightarrow{\mu_{r-1}} \cdots \xrightarrow{\mu_2} S_1 \xrightarrow{\mu_1} S_0 = \Sigma_B.$$

Thus letting  $\nu_j = \text{mult}_{p_j}(C_{j-1})$ , we get a sequence of integers  $\nu_1, \nu_2, \dots, \nu_r$  such that  $\nu_1 \geq \nu_2, \dots, \nu_r \geq 2$ , where  $C_0$  stands for C.

**Definition 1** The type of the pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  is defined to be  $[\sigma *e, B; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  and the type of a curve C on  $\mathbf{P}^2$  is denoted by  $[d; \nu_0, \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  where d is the degree of C and  $\nu_0, \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r$  denote the multiplicities of singular points of C.

Occasionally, the curve C of a pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  is said to be a curve of type  $[\sigma * e, B; \nu_1, \nu_2, \dots, \nu_r]$ . For simplicity,  $[\sigma * e, 0; \nu_1, \nu_2, \dots, \nu_r]$  is rewritten as  $[\sigma * e; \nu_1, \nu_2, \dots, \nu_r]$ .

In the case where C is itself non-singular, we put r=0 or r=1 and  $\nu_1$  =1 by convention.

## 3 Elementary transformations

#### 3.1 $I_+(p,\nu_1), I_-(p,\nu_1)$

We shall introduce special kinds of birational transformations among Hirzebruch surfaces, called elementary transformations. Take a point p on  $\Sigma_B$ . Blowing up at p, we get a birational morphism  $\mu: S_1 \to S_0 = \Sigma_B$ . Then letting F be a fiber  $\rho^{-1}(\rho(p))$  of  $\Sigma_B$  and letting E be the exceptional curve  $\mu^{-1}(p)$ , we obtain

$$\mu^*(\sigma\Delta_{\infty} + eF_c) \sim \mu^*(C) = C' + \nu_1 E,$$

$$\mu^*(F_c) \sim \mu^*(F) = F' + E.$$

Here  $F_c = \rho^{-1}(c)$ ; F' and C' denote the proper inverse images of F and C, respectively, and  $\nu_1$  indicates the multiplicity of C at p.

If  $p \in \Delta_{\infty}$ , then denoting by  $\Delta'_{\infty}$  the image of  $\Delta_{\infty}$ , we get  $(\Delta'_{\infty})^2 = -B - 1$ . Moreover,  $\mu^*(\Delta_{\infty}) = \Delta'_{\infty} + E$ , and

$$C' \sim \sigma(\Delta'_{\infty} + E) + e(F' + E) - \nu_1 E$$
.

Since  $F'^2=-1$ , F' becomes an exceptional curve. Contracting F' into a non-singular point p', we get a non-singular surface S' and a proper birational morphism  $\mu':S_1\to S'$ . By  $\Delta'_\infty\cdot F'=\Delta_\infty\cdot F-1=1-1=0, \mu'$  is isomorphic around  $\Delta'_\infty$ . Thus, the image  $\Delta''_\infty$  of  $\Delta'_\infty$  by  $\mu'$  is isomorphic to  $\Delta'_\infty$ . Hence,

$$(\Delta''_{\infty})^2 = {\Delta'_{\infty}}^2 = {\Delta_{\infty}}^2 - 1 = -B - 1.$$

This implies that S' is isomorphic to  $\Sigma_{B+1}$ . The image of C' by  $\mu'$  is denoted by  $C_0$ , that satisfies

$$C_0 \sim \sigma' \Delta_{\infty}'' + e' F_v,$$

for some integers  $\sigma'$  and e', where  $F_v$  is a fiber of the  $\mathbf{P}^1$  – bundle  $\Sigma_{B+1}$ . The proper inverse image F' of  $F_v$  by  $\mu'$  satisfies

$$\mu'^*(F_v) = F' + E.$$

Let  $\nu'_1$  denote the multiplicity of  $C_0$  at p'. Then

$$C' \sim \sigma' \Delta_{\infty}'' + e'(F' + E) - \nu_1' F'.$$

Since E, F' and  $\Delta''_{\infty}$  are linearly independent, it follows that

$$\sigma' = \sigma, \quad \sigma + e - \nu_1 = e', \quad e = e' - \nu'_1.$$

Hence,

$$\nu'_1 = \sigma - \nu_1, \quad e' = e + \nu'_1 = e + \sigma - \nu_1.$$

Also in the case when  $p \notin \Delta_{\infty}$ , we get the similar result. Thus, the next proposition is established.

**Proposition 1** 1. If  $p \in \Delta_{\infty}$  then  $\sigma' = \sigma$ ,  $S' = \Sigma_{B+1}$  and  $\nu'_1 = \sigma - \nu_1, e' = e + \nu'_1$ .

2. If 
$$p \notin \Delta_{\infty}$$
 then  $\sigma' = \sigma, B > 0$  and  $S' = \Sigma_{B-1}, \nu'_1 = \sigma - \nu_1, e' = e - \nu_1$ .

Note that in the case when  $B=1, p \notin \Delta_{\infty}$ , S' becomes  $\Sigma_0$  and  $e' < \sigma'$  may happen.

The birational map  $\mu \cdot \mu'^{-1}$  is called elementary transformation of type I. More precisely, if  $p \in \Delta_{\infty}$  then the birational map  $\mu \cdot \mu'^{-1}$  is said to be the elementary transformation  $I_{+}(p,\nu_{1})$ . If  $p \notin \Delta_{\infty}$  then the birational map  $\mu \cdot \mu'^{-1}$  is said to be the elementary transformation  $I_{-}(p,\nu_{1})$ .

NOTE: During the performance of an elementary transformation, the singular point with multiplicity  $\nu_1$  disappears and a singular point with multiplicity  $\nu_1'$  appears if  $\nu_1' > 0$ .

Let (S, D) be a pair obtained from the pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  of type  $[\sigma *e, B; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  by minimal resolution of singularities of C. Moreover, let  $(S_0, D_0)$  be a pair obtained by minimal resolution of singularities from the pair (S, D) by the elementary transformation  $I_+(p, \nu_1)$  where  $\nu_1 = \text{mult}_p(C)$ . Then if  $\nu'_1 \neq 1$ , we get

$$D_0^2 - D^2 = C^2 - \nu_1^2 - C_0^2 + \nu_1'^2$$
  
=  $\sigma(2e - \sigma B) - \nu_1^2 - \sigma(2(e + \sigma - \nu_1) - \sigma(B + 1)) + \nu_1'^2 = 0.$ 

Moreover, if  $\nu'_1 = 1$ , then

$$D_0^2 - D^2 = 1.$$

Thus,  $D^2$  increases.

In both cases, we write  $D_0^2 - D^2 = \varepsilon(I_-(p, \nu_1))$ . Similarly, let (S, D) be a pair obtained by minimal resolution of singularities from the pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$ 

and let  $(S_0, D_0)$  be a pair obtained by minimal resolution of singularities from the pair (S, D) by the elementary transformation  $I_{-}(p, \nu_1)$ . In this case, if  $\nu'_1 \neq 1$ , then

$$D_0^2 - D^2 = 0$$

and moreover, if  $\nu'_1 = 1$ , then

$$D_0^2 - D^2 = 1$$
.

When  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$  and  $p_1 \in \Delta_{\infty}$ , after performing an elementary transformation  $I_+(p,\nu_1)$  to a pair of type  $[\sigma * e, B; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$ , the new type denoted by  $[\sigma * e', B'; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  satisfies that  $e' = e + \nu_1, B' = B + 1$  and then  $g_0 = (e-1)(\sigma-1) - \frac{B\sigma(\sigma-1)}{2} = (e'-1)(\sigma-1) - \frac{B'\sigma(\sigma-1)}{2}$  and  $C^2 = 2e\sigma + \sigma^2 B = 2e'\sigma + \sigma^2 B'$ . Therefore,  $g_0$  and  $C^2$  are invariant under elementary transformations  $I_+(p,\nu_1)$  and  $I_-(p,\nu_1)$ .

Therefore, starting from the type  $[2\nu_1 * e; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$ , we get the type  $[2\nu_1 * (e+\nu_1), 1; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  and  $[2\nu_1 * (e+2\nu_1), 2; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  provided that  $e+2\nu_1 \geq 4\nu_1$ . Note that if  $e \geq i\nu_1$  then the type  $[2\nu_1 * (e+i\nu_1), i; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  is possible.

**Remark 1** Moreover, if  $e \ge i\nu_1$  then the types  $[2\nu_1*(e+i\nu_1), i; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  for  $1 \le i \le [e/\nu_1]$  are said to be the types associated with  $[2\nu_1*e, 0; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$ .

For example, the types associated with  $[8*8;4^6,3^4]$  are  $[8*12,1;4^6,3^4]$  and  $[8*16,2;4^6,3^4]$ .

After a finite succession of elementary transformations of type I and II, we can assume  $\sigma = 0$  or  $\sigma = 1$  or  $\sigma \ge 2\nu_1$  and moreover if B = 0, then we assume that  $\sigma \ge 2\nu_1$  and  $\sigma \le e$ .

#### **3.2** III $(p, \nu_1)$

In the case when B=1, we get  $\Delta_{\infty}^2=-1$ ; hence  $\Delta_{\infty}$  is also an exceptional curve. Take a point p from  $S-\Delta_{\infty}$  with multiplicity  $\nu_1$  and blow up at p. Then we obtain a non-singular surface U and a proper birational morphism  $\mu:U\to\Sigma_1$ . The inverse image of p is an exceptional curve E, that satisfies  $\Delta_{\infty}\cap E=\emptyset$ . Letting C' denote the proper inverse image of C, we get

$$C' \sim \sigma \Delta_{\infty} + e(F' + E) - \nu_1 E$$
.

Contracting  $\Delta_{\infty}$  into a non-singular point q, we get a non-singular surface W and a proper birational morphism  $\lambda: U \to W$ . W is isomorphic to  $\Sigma_1$ , which has a  $\mathbf{P}^1$ - fibering. The image of E is a section of the fibering, which we denote by  $\Delta$ . Then  $\Delta^2 = -1$ . The image  $C_0$  of C' by  $\lambda$  is written as follows for some  $\sigma'$  and e' in the space of linear equivalence classes:

$$C_0 \sim \sigma' \Delta + e' F_v$$
.

Here  $F_v$  denotes a general fiber of the  $\mathbf{P}^1$  bundle of W. By the same argument as before, we get

$$\sigma' = e - \nu_1, \quad e' = e, \quad \nu_1' = e - \sigma,$$

where  $\nu'_1$  indicates the multiplicity of  $C_0$  at q. The birational map  $\varphi$ :  $W \to \Sigma_1$  that is a composition of  $\mu$  and  $\lambda^{-1}$  is said to be an elementary transformation  $\text{III}(p,\nu_1)$ . Then

$$C^2 - {\nu_1}^2 = \sigma(2e - \sigma) - {\nu_1}^2$$

and

$$C_0^2 - \nu_1'^2 = (e - \nu_1)(2e - e + \nu_1) - (e - \sigma)^2 = \sigma(2e - \sigma) - \nu_1^2 = C^2 - \nu_1^2.$$

Letting (S, D) be a pair obtained by minimal resolution of singularities from the pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  and  $(S_0, D_0)$  a pair obtained by minimal resolution of singularities from the pair by the elementary transformation  $III(p, \nu_1)$ .

If  $\nu'_1 \neq 1$ , then

$$D_0^2 - D^2 = 0$$

and moreover, if  $\nu'_1 = 1$ , then

$$D_0^2 - D^2 = 1$$
.

Also in these cases, we write  $D_0^2 - D^2 = \varepsilon(\text{III}(p, \nu_1))$ .

Now we take a point  $p_1$  where  $\nu_1 = \text{mult }_{p_1}(C) = \nu_1(C)$ . If  $e - \sigma < \nu_1$ , then  $\Delta_{\infty}$  does not pass through  $p_1$ , since  $e - \sigma = \Delta_{\infty} \cdot C < \text{mult}_{p_1}(C) = \nu_1$ . Thus we can apply an elementary transformation of type III with center  $p_1$  and then the transformed curve  $C_0$  has the type  $[\sigma' * e', 1; \nu'_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$ , where  $\nu'_1 = e - \sigma < \nu_1$  and  $\sigma' = e - \nu_1 < \sigma$ . Note that  $\nu'_1$  may be smaller than  $\nu_2$ .

#### 3.3 #- minimal model

Finally we consider the case when C is itself non-singular. If B=1 and  $e-\sigma=\nu_1=1$ , then  $\Delta_{\infty}$  is an exceptional curve with  $\Delta_{\infty}\cdot C=1$ . This implies that  $(\Sigma_1,C)$  is not relatively minimal. Contracting  $\Delta_{\infty}$  into a non-singular point of  $\mathbf{P}^2$ , we get a non-singular curve  $C_1$  on  $\mathbf{P}^2$ . The contraction gives rise to a birational morphism  $\lambda: \Sigma_1 \to \mathbf{P}^2$  which is the inverse of the blowing up. The morphism  $\lambda$  is said to be a transformation  $O_{-}(\Delta_{\infty})$ .

**Definition 2** Assume that  $\sigma \geq 2\nu_1$  and  $e \geq \sigma + B\nu_1$ . Moreover, if B = 1 then assume  $e - \sigma > 1$ . When the above conditions are satisfied, the pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  is said to be #- minimal. Occasionally, the #- minimal pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  is said to be a #- minimal model of a pair (S, D), if it is birationally equivalent to (S, D).

For simplicity, the curve C is said to be #- minimal, whenever the pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  is #- minimal.

## 4 logarithmic plurigenera

Let (S, D) be a non-singular minimal pair. Then either  $S = \mathbf{P}^2$  or (S, D) is derived from a #- minimal pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  of type  $[\sigma * e, B; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$  by a finite succession of blowing ups at singular points of C.

The next relations among linear equivalence classes hold:

$$D \sim C - \sum_{j=1}^{r} \nu_j E_j, \quad K_S \sim K_0 + \sum_{j=1}^{r} E_j,$$

$$D + \nu_1 K_S \sim C + \nu_1 K_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r (\nu_1 - \nu_j) E_j.$$

Then  $|C + \nu_1 K_0| \neq \emptyset$  and so  $|D + \nu_1 K_S| \neq \emptyset$ .

#### 4.1 nef divisors

We recall some basic results on non-singular minimal pairs (S, D) under the assumption g = g(D) > 0 ([6, Iitaka]). For simplicity, g - 1 is denoted by  $\overline{g}$ .

Whenever g > 0,  $Z = K_S + D$  is a nef divisor and  $Z \cdot D = 2\overline{g}$ ,  $Z^2 \ge 0$ . Moreover,  $Z^2 = 0$  if and only if  $\kappa[D] = 0, 1$  ([6, Proposition 3,p299]).

We shall prove the following three lemmas.

**Lemma 1** 1.  $(D + \nu_1 K_S) \cdot D > 0$ ,

 $2. (\nu_1 - 1)D^2 \le 2\nu_1 \overline{g}.$ 

In particular, if  $\nu_1 \geq 2$  then  $D^2 \leq 4\overline{g}$ . Moreover, if  $\nu_1 \geq 3$  then  $D^2 \leq 3\overline{g}$ .

Proof: Suppose that  $(D + \nu_1 K_S) \cdot D < 0$ . Then since  $|D + \nu_1 K_S| \neq \emptyset$ , it follows that  $|D + \nu_1 K_S - D| \neq \emptyset$ . This implies that  $|\nu_1 K_S| \neq \emptyset$ ; hence,  $\kappa(S) \geq 0$ . This contradicts that S is a rational surface. Hence,  $(D + \nu_1 K_S) \cdot D \geq 0$ . On the other hand,  $(\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot D = 2\nu_1 \overline{g} - (\nu_1 - 1)D^2$ , which induces the result.

**Lemma 2** Suppose that  $\nu_1 \geq \nu > 0$ . If Y is a nef divisor on S, then  $(D + \nu K_S) \cdot Y \geq 0$ .

Proof: Since  $|D + \nu_1 K_S| \neq \emptyset$ , taking F from  $|D + \nu_1 K_S|$  we obtain

$$\nu_1(D + \nu K_S) \sim \nu_1 D + \nu (F - D) = (\nu_1 - \nu)D + \nu F.$$

Hence,  $\nu_1(D + \nu K_S) \cdot Y = ((\nu_1 - \nu)D) \cdot Y + \nu F \cdot Y \ge 0$ ; thus we obtain the result.

Lemma 3 (Theorem of adjoint of special index 2) Under the hypothesis that  $\kappa[D] = 2$  and  $\sigma \ge 4$ ,  $2Z - D = D + 2K_S$  is a nef divisor. Moreover,  $(2Z - D)^2 \ge 0$ . If  $(2Z - D)^2 = 0$  then  $2Z - D \sim 0$  and  $\sigma = 4$ .

When the type is [d;1], 2Z - D is a nef divisor if and only if  $d \ge 6$ . Moreover, if  $(2Z - D)^2 = 0$  then the type is [6;1].

Proof: Since  $\sigma \geq 4$ , it follows that  $2Z_0 - C \sim (\sigma - 4)\Delta_0 + (f + 2B - 4)F_c$ , which is nef. Moreover,  $(2Z_0 - C)^2 = (\sigma - 4)(B\sigma + 2f - 8) \geq 0$ . Thus  $(2Z_0 - C)^2 = 0$  if and only if  $\sigma = 4$ . Therefore, if  $\nu_1 = 1$ , namely if C is nonsingular, the result follows.

Suppose that  $\nu_1 \geq 2$ . Even in the case where g = 0,  $|D + 2K_S| \neq \emptyset$ .

Assume that there were an irreducible curve A such that  $(2Z-D)\cdot A<0$ .

Then  $D \neq A$ . Indeed, by Lemma 1,  $D^2 \leq \frac{2\nu_1}{\nu_1 - 1}\overline{g} \leq 4\overline{g}$ . In particular,  $(D + 2K_S) \cdot D = (2Z - D) \cdot D = 4\overline{g} - D^2 \geq 0$ .

Taking F from  $|D + \nu_1 K_S|$ , we get

$$\nu_1(2Z-D) \sim \nu_1 D + 2\nu_1 K_S \sim 2F + (\nu_1-2)D$$
.

Then  $A \cdot (2F + (\nu_1 - 2)D) < 0$  and so  $2A \cdot F < -A(\nu_1 - 2) \cdot D \le 0$ , which would imply that  $A \cdot F < 0$  and so  $A^2 < 0$ . Moreover,

$$0 > (2Z - D) \cdot A = D \cdot A + 2K_S \cdot A \ge 2K_S \cdot A.$$

Therefore,  $A^2 = A \cdot K_S = -1$  and so  $0 > D \cdot A - 2$ ; thus  $D \cdot A < 2$ . But since (S, D) is minimal, it follows that  $A \cdot D \geq 2$ ; a contradiction.

Recalling that  $\nu_1 \geq 2$  and that 2Z - D is nef, by Lemma 2 we get  $(2Z - D)^2 > 0$ .

Assume that  $(2Z - D)^2 = 0$ . We shall examine the equality in the following cases, separately.

case (1)  $\nu_1 \ge 3$ .

Since 2Z - D is nef and  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ , it follows that  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) \geq 0$ . But

$$0 \le (3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D)$$
  
=2(2Z - D) \cdot (2Z - D) + -Z \cdot (2Z - D)  
= -Z \cdot (2Z - D) \le 0.

Hence,  $(3Z-2D)\cdot(2Z-D)=Z\cdot(2Z-D)=0$ . Therefore,  $D\cdot(2Z-D)=0$ ; hence it follows that  $D^2 = 4\overline{q}$  and  $Z^2 = \overline{q}$ .

Assume that q > 1. Then Z is nef and big. Hence,  $D + 2K_S = 2Z - D \sim 0$ by Hodge's index Theorem.

Moreover,

$$\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D \sim \nu_1 Z - 2(\nu_1 - 1)Z = (2 - \nu_1)Z.$$

But  $|\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D| \neq \emptyset$  and  $\kappa(S, Z) \geq 0$ . Hence,  $Z \sim 0$ , which contradicts

Assume that g = 0. Then  $D^2 = 4\overline{g} = -4$ , which contradicts the fact  $D^2 \le -5$ .

case (2)  $\nu_1 \le 2$ .

Since  $2Z - D \sim D + 2K_S \sim C + 2K_0$ , it follows that

$$(2Z - D)^2 = (C + 2K_0)^2 = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma B + 2f - 8) \ge 0.$$

But  $\sigma \geq 4$  and Q = 0. Hence, we obtain  $\sigma = 4$ .

In what follows, Q stands for  $(2Z - D)^2$ .

#### 4.2 formula for plurigenera

**Proposition 2** Suppose that (S,D) is minimal with  $g = g(D) \ge 2$  and  $\kappa[D] = 2$ . Then letting  $Z = K_S + D$ , for any m > 0, if g > 1 then

$$P_m[D] = \frac{m(m-1)}{2}Z^2 + m\overline{g} + 1,$$
  
$$P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2g - 1 = Z^2 + 2\overline{g} + 1.$$

Moreover, if g = 1 then

$$P_m[D] = \frac{m(m-1)}{2}Z^2 + 2,$$
  
 $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2.$ 

Proof: Since Z is nef and big, by a vanishing theorem due to Kawamata,  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + mZ)) = 0$  for any m > 0. Hence, by Riemann-Roch,

$$\dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + mZ)) = \frac{mZ \cdot (K_S + mZ)}{2} + 1 = \frac{m(m+1)}{2}Z^2 - \overline{g}m + 1.$$

From the exact sequence of sheaves

$$0 \to \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + mZ) \to \mathcal{O}_S((m+1)Z) \to \mathcal{O}_D((m+1)K_D) \to 0$$

we obtain

$$P_{m+1}[D] = \dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + mZ)) + \dim H^0(D, \mathcal{O}_D((m+1)K_D))$$

If  $m \geq 2$  and g > 1 then  $H^0(D, \mathcal{O}_D((m+1)K_D) = 0$ ; hence,

$$P_{m+1}[D] = \frac{m(m+1)}{2}Z^2 + \overline{g}(m+1) + 1.$$

If  $m \geq 2$  and g = 1 then  $H^0(D, \mathcal{O}_D((m+1)K_D) = \mathbf{C}$ ; hence,

$$P_{m+1}[D] = \frac{m(m+1)}{2}Z^2 + 2,$$
  
 $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2.$ 

Here.

$$Z^2 = (K_S + D)^2 = 4\overline{g} + K_S^2 - D^2.$$

Later, it will be shown that if g = 0 then  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2$ . Note that  $P_2[D]$  may be called *bigenus*.

We shall show some relations among  $Z^2, Z \cdot D, D^2$  involving the multiplicities of singularities.

#### 4.3 Formula I

Let (S, D) be a non-singular minimal pair which is birationally equivalent to a # minimal pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  of type  $[\sigma * e, B; \nu_1, \nu_2, \cdots, \nu_r]$ . Let  $Z_0$  denote  $C + K_0$  and let  $t_j$  denote the number of j— ple singular points of the curve C. For simplicity, by  $\tilde{B}$  we denote  $B\sigma + 2f$ .

**Definition 3** Define  $\tau_m$  to be  $(\sigma - m)(\tilde{B} - 2m)$ .

For example, 
$$\tau_1 = (\sigma - 1)(\tilde{B} - 2) = 2g_0$$
.

**Lemma 4** For any integers  $\nu, \mu$ ,

$$(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot (\mu Z_0 - (\mu - 1)C) = \tau_{\nu + \mu} - 2(\nu - \mu)^2.$$

In particular,  $(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot Z_0 = \tau_{\nu+1} - 2(\nu - 1)^2$  and  $(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot (2Z_0 - c) = \tau_{\nu+2} - 2(\nu - 2)^2$ .

Proof: By definition.

$$(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot (\mu Z_0 - (\mu - 1)C)$$

$$= ((\sigma - 2\nu)\Delta_0 + (f + \nu B - 2\nu)F_c)((\sigma - 2\mu)\Delta_0 + (f + \mu B - 2\mu)F_c)$$

$$= (\sigma - 2\nu)(\sigma - 2\mu)B + (\sigma - 2\nu)(f + \mu B - 2\mu) + (\sigma - 2\mu)(f + \nu B - 2\nu)$$

$$= (\sigma - \nu - \mu)B\sigma + (\sigma - 2\nu - 2\mu)(f - 2\mu) + (\sigma - 2\nu - 2\mu)(f - 2\nu)$$

$$+ (\mu - \nu)(f - 2\nu) - (\mu - \nu)(f - 2\mu) - 2(\mu - \nu)^2$$

$$= (\sigma - \nu - \mu)(B\sigma + 2f - 2\nu - 2\mu) - 2(\mu - \nu)^2$$

$$= \tau_{\nu + \mu} - 2(\nu - \mu)^2.$$

From  $(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot (2Z_0 - C) - 2(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot Z_0 = -(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot C$  and Lemma 4, we get the next result, which would be very useful.

#### Lemma 5 (Formula I)

1. Letting 
$$\widetilde{\delta}(\nu)$$
 be  $\sum_{j=2}^{\nu_1} (j-1)(\nu-j)t_j$ , we obtain 
$$(\nu Z - (\nu-1)D) \cdot Z = (\nu Z_0 - (\nu-1)C) \cdot Z_0 + \widetilde{\delta}(\nu),$$
$$(\nu Z_0 - (\nu-1)C) \cdot Z_0 = \tau_{\nu+1} - 2(\nu-1)^2.$$

2. Letting 
$$\widetilde{\delta}_0(\nu)$$
 be  $\sum_{j=2}^{\nu_1} j(\nu-j)t_j$ , we obtain

$$(\nu Z - (\nu - 1)D) \cdot D = (\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot C + \widetilde{\delta}_0(\nu),$$
  
$$(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C) \cdot C = \tau_{\nu} - 2\nu^2.$$

3. Letting  $\widetilde{\delta}_1(\nu)$  be  $\sum_{j=2}^{\nu_1} (\nu - j)^2 t_j$ , we obtain

$$(\nu Z - (\nu - 1)D)^2 = (\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C)^2 - \widetilde{\delta}_1(\nu),$$
$$(\nu Z_0 - (\nu - 1)C)^2 = \tau_{2\nu}.$$

By Lemma 4, the next result is obtained.

#### Corollary 1

$$\nu(\tau_{\mu+1} - 2(\mu - 1)^2) - (\nu - 1)(\tau_{\mu} - 2\mu^2) = \tau_{\nu+\mu} - 2(\nu - \mu)^2,$$

and

$$\nu \tau_{\mu+1} - (\nu - 1)\tau_{\mu} = \tau_{\nu+\mu} - 2\nu^2 + 2\nu.$$

Remark 2 When  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ ,

$$\widetilde{\delta}(2) = \widetilde{\delta}_0(2) = \widetilde{\delta}_1(2) = 0.$$

When  $\nu_1 \leq 3$ ,

$$\widetilde{\delta}(3) = t_2, \quad \widetilde{\delta}_0(3) = 2t_2, \quad \widetilde{\delta}_1(3) = t_2.$$

Corollary 2 When  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ ,

$$(\sigma - 3)(B\sigma + 2f - 6) = 4 - 2g + 2Z^2$$
.

Proof: Applying Remark in the case when  $\nu_1 \leq 2$  and  $\nu = 2$ , we obtain

$$2Z^2 - 2g + 2 = (2Z - D) \cdot Z = \tau_3 - 2,$$

where 
$$\tau_3 = (\sigma - 3)(B\sigma + 2f - 6)$$
.

Claim 1 Let  $X = \sigma - m$  and  $Y = \tilde{B} - 2m$ . If  $\sigma \ge m$ , then  $X \le Y$  except for B = 1 and m > 2f.

In the exceptional case, B=1 and  $m>2f\geq 4$ . Hence,  $m\geq 5$ .

#### 4.4 mixed plurigenera

If  $m \ge a$  then every dim  $|mK_S + aD| + 1$  is also a birational invariant as pairs, which is denoted by  $P_{m,a}[D]$ . They are called **mixed plurigenera**.

If g > 0 then  $Z = K_S + D$  is nef and big. Hence,  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + Z)) = 0$  by a vanishing theorem ;thus

$$P_{2,1}[D] = \dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + Z)) = \frac{(K_S + Z) \cdot Z}{2} + 1 = Z^2 - g + 2.$$

By Lemma 3, if g > 0,  $\kappa[D] = 2$  and  $\sigma \ge 5$  or  $d \ge 7$ ,  $2Z - D = D + 2K_S$  is a nef and big divisor. Hence,  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(D + 3K_S)) = H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + 2Z - D)) = 0$ ; thus

$$P_{3,1}[D] = \dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(3K_S + D)) = \frac{(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D)}{2} + 1$$

$$= 3A - \alpha + 1$$

$$= \frac{Q + 2A + D^2 - 4\overline{g}}{2} + 1$$

$$= 3Z^2 + 8 - 7g + D^2.$$

Here  $A = \frac{Z \cdot (2Z - D)}{2}$  and  $\alpha = D \cdot (2Z - D) = 4\overline{g} - D^2$ . Therefore we obtain the next proposition:

**Proposition 3** Suppose that  $\kappa[D] = 2$  and  $\sigma \ge 5$  or  $d \ge 7$ . Then

$$P_{3,1}[D] = 3Z^2 + 1 - 7\overline{g} + D^2 \ge 0.$$

Theorem 1 (Existence of adjoint of special index 3) Assume that  $\sigma \geq$  6. Then either  $|D + 3K_S| \neq \emptyset$  or the type is  $[6 * 8, 1; 2^r]$ .

Proof: Suppose that  $P_{3,1}[D] = 0$ . Then  $3Z^2 + 1 - 7\overline{g} + D^2 = 0$ , i.e.,  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) + 2 = 0$ . Then  $\nu_1 \neq 3$  and we shall show that  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ . Actually, otherwise  $\nu_1 \geq 4$  and so  $|D + \nu_1 K_S| \neq \emptyset$ . Letting Y be  $D + 2K_S$ , which is nef and big for  $\sigma > 5$ .

Taking F from  $|D + \nu_1 K_S|$  we have

$$\nu_1(3Z-2D) \sim 3(F-D) + \nu_1D = (\nu_1-3)D + 3F.$$

By computing intersection numbers with Y we obtain

$$\nu_1(3Z-2D) \cdot Y = (\nu_1-3)D \cdot Y + 3F \cdot Y > 0.$$

But  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot Y = -2$ . This is a contradiction. Therefore,  $\nu_1 \leq 2$  has been established and so  $\widetilde{\delta}(2) = \widetilde{\delta_0}(2) = 0$ .

Letting  $\tilde{B}$  be  $B\sigma + 2f$ , we obtain by a corollary to Lemma 4

$$(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 3Z \cdot (2Z - D) - 2D \cdot (2Z - D)$$
$$= 3(\tau_3 - 2) - 2(\tau_2 - 8)$$
$$= \tau_5 - 2$$
$$= (\sigma - 5) \cdot (\tilde{B} - 10) - 2.$$

Hence,  $(\sigma - 5) \cdot (\tilde{B} - 10) = 0$ , which implies  $\tilde{B} - 10 = 0$ , i.e.,  $B\sigma + 2f = 10$ . Therefore,  $\sigma = 6, B = 1, f = 2$ .

In particular,  $(D+3K_S)\cdot D \geq 0$  if  $\sigma \geq 6$  except for the case of  $[6*8,1;2^r]$  where r=0,1,2. Indeed, in the case of  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , one has  $2\omega=(D+3K_S)\cdot D=2(r-3)$ .

**Theorem 2** Suppose that  $\sigma \geq 6$  and g > 0,  $\kappa[D] = 2$  where the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , r = 0,1,2. If  $(D+3K_S) \cdot D = 0$  then either  $D+3K_S \sim 0$  or the type is  $[6*8,1;2^3]$ .

Proof: First, under the assumption that the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , we shall show that  $3Z - 2D = D + 3K_S$  is nef. Actually, otherwise there exists an irreducible curve A such that  $(D + 3K_S) \cdot A < 0$ . From hypothesis  $(D + 3K_S) \cdot D = 0$ , we derive  $A \neq D$ ; hence,  $D \cdot A \geq 0$ .

Since  $|D+3K_S| \neq \emptyset$ , it follows that  $A^2 < 0$  and so  $(D+3K_S) \cdot A = D \cdot A + 3K_S \cdot A < 0$ . Therefore, A turns out to be an exceptional curve. But since (S,D) is minimal, we obtain  $D \cdot A = 2$ . Therefore, contracting A into a non-singular point  $p_0$  on a nonsingular surface W, we obtain a proper birational morphism  $\mu: S \to W$ . Let  $D_0$  be  $\mu(D)$ , which has a double point at  $p_0$ . Then  $D \sim D_0 - 2A$  and  $K_S \sim K_W + A$ . Putting  $Y = D + 3K_S, Y_0 = D_0 + 3K_W$ , we obtain  $Y \cdot D = 0, Y \sim Y_0 + A$ ; hence

$$Y \cdot D = (Y_0 + A) \cdot (D_0 - 2A) = Y_0 \cdot D_0 + 2$$
.

Since  $|Y| = |Y_0| + A$ , it follows that  $|Y_0| \neq \emptyset$ . Hence,  $Y_0 \cdot D_0 \geq 0$ . Actually, otherwise,  $Y_0 \cdot D_0 < 0$  implies that  $D_0$  is a fixed component of  $|Y_0|$  and thus  $\emptyset \neq |Y_0| - D_0 = |3K_W|$ , a contradiction. Therefore,  $Y_0 \cdot D_0 \geq 0$ . However, by hypothesis,  $Y \cdot D = 0$  and by definition  $-2 = Y \cdot D - 2 = Y_0 \cdot D_0 \geq 0$ ; a contradiction.

Therefore, 3Z - 2D is nef and so  $(3Z - 2D)^2 \ge 0$ .

If  $(3Z-2D)^2>0$  then  $(3Z-2D)\cdot D=0$  implies that  $D\sim 0$  or  $D^2<0$  by Hodge's index theorem . But  $0\leq 6\overline{g}=3Z\cdot D=2D^2$ ; a contradiction. Hence,  $(3Z-2D)^2=0$  has been established.

But  $0 = (3Z - 2D)^2 = 3(3Z - 2D) \cdot Z - 2(3Z - 2D) \cdot D = 3(3Z - 2D) \cdot Z$ . Hence,  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot Z = 0$ . Recalling that Z is nef and big, we conclude that  $3Z - 2D = D + 3K_S \sim 0$ .

From the proof of Proposition 2, we derive the following formula:

**Proposition 4** Suppose that (S,D) is minimal with g > 0 and  $\kappa[D] = 2$ . Then

$$P_{m,m-1}[D] = \frac{m(m-1)}{2}Z^2 - \overline{g}(m-1) + 1,$$
  
$$P_{2,1}[D] = Z^2 - \overline{g} + 1 = Z^2 - g + 2.$$

Since  $P_{2,1}[D] \ge 0$ , it follows that  $Z^2 \ge \overline{g} - 1$  and hence,  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2\overline{g} + 1 = Z^2 + 2g - 1 \ge 3\overline{g}$ .

Moreover, if g > 0,  $\kappa[D] = 2$  and  $\sigma > 4$  then  $W = \frac{3}{2} \times (2Z - D)$  is a nef and big divisor with fractional part. Since  $\lceil W \rceil = 3Z - D = 3K_S + 2D$ , we derive  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + 3K_S + 2D)) = 0$ ; thus

$$P_{4,2}[D] = \dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(4K_S + 2D))$$

$$= \frac{(4K_S + 2D) \cdot (3K_S + 2D)}{2} + 1$$

$$= (2Z - D) \cdot (3Z - D) + 1$$

$$= 6Z^2 - 10\overline{q} + 1 + D^2.$$

#### 4.5 estimates for bigenera

Suppose that  $\sigma \geq 4$ . By Lemma 3, we get

$$0 \le (D + 2K_S) \cdot Z = (2Z - D) \cdot Z = 2Z^2 - D \cdot Z = 2(Z^2 - g + 1),$$
$$P_{2,1}[D] = Z^2 + 2 - g.$$

Thus, if g > 1,

$$Z^2 \ge \overline{g}$$
 and  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2g - 1 = \ge 3g - 2$ .

Further, if q > 1, then

$$P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2g - 1 = P_{2,1}[D] + 3g - 3.$$

If g = 1 then

$$P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2 = P_{2,1}[D] + 1.$$

- Suppose that  $S = \Sigma_B$  and  $\sigma = 3$ . Then  $g \ge 4$ ,  $D^2 = 3g + 6$  and  $Z^2 = 8 - D^2 + 4g - 4 = g - 2$ .
- Suppose that  $\nu_1 = 1$  and  $S = \mathbf{P}^2$ . If the type is [d; 1] where  $d \geq 4$ , then  $Z = D + K_S \sim (d-3)H$ , H being a line.

Since 
$$Z^2 = (d-3)^2$$
 and  $g_0 = \frac{(d-1)(d-2)}{2}$ , it follows that

$$Z^2 - (g_0 - 2) = \frac{(d-4)(d-5)}{2} \ge 0.$$

Consequently, we obtain the following result.

**Theorem 3** Suppose that (S,D) is a relatively minimal pair with  $g = g(D) \ge 1$ . Letting Z be  $K_S + D$ , we obtain

- 1. If g > 1 then  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2g 1 \ge 2g 1$ .
- 2. If g > 1 and  $P_2[D] = 2g 1$  or g = 1 and  $P_2[D] = 2$ , then  $Z^2 = 0$  and  $\kappa[D] = 0$  or 1.
- 3. If  $\kappa[D] = 2, g > 1$ , then  $Z^2 \ge g 2$  and  $P_2[D] \ge 3g 3$ .
- 4. If  $\kappa[D] = 2, g = 1$ , then  $Z^2 \ge 1$  and  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2 \ge 3$ .
- 5. If  $P_2[D] = 3g 3$  and g > 2, then  $Z^2 = g 2$  and one of the following cases occurs.
  - (a)  $S = \Sigma_B$  and  $\sigma = 3$  or
  - (b)  $S = \mathbf{P}^2$  and d = 4 or 5. In both cases,  $P_{2,1}[D] = 0$ .
- 6.  $P_{21}[D] = A + 1$ , where  $A = Z^2 \overline{g}$ .
- 7. If q > 1 then  $P_2[D] = P_{21}[D] + 3\overline{q}$

In that follows, we shall determine types of #minimal pairs of minimal pairs (S, D) with  $P_2[D] = 2g, 2g+1; 3g-2, 3g-1, 3g$ , in other words, (S, D) with  $Z^2 = 1, 2; g-1, g, g+1$ .

First, we consider the case in which the type is [d; 1] where  $P_2[D]$  is small.

**Proposition 5** Assume that the type is [d; 1].

- 1. If  $Z^2 = 1$  then d = 4 and  $P_2[D] = 6$ .
- 2. Assume that  $Z^2 = g 2 + j$  where j = 0, 1, 2, 3. If j = 0 then d = 4, 5. If j = 2 then d = 3, 6. If j = 3 then d = 4, 7.

Proof: If the type is [d; 1], then  $Z^2 = (d-3)^2$ . Assume that  $Z^2 = 1$  or 2. Then d = 4 and  $Z^2 = 1$ .

Assume that  $Z^2 = g - 2 + j, j \ge 0$ . Then since 2g - 2 = (d - 1)(d - 2), it follows that (d - 3)(d - 6) = j - 2. Hence, the result follows immediately.

#### 5 relations between A and $\alpha$

Two more invariants  $A, \alpha$  are introduced:

$$A = (2Z - D) \cdot Z/2 = Z^2 - \overline{g}, \alpha = (2Z - D) \cdot D = 4\overline{g} - D^2.$$

Since 2Z - D is nef for  $\sigma \ge 4$  and  $\kappa[D] = 2$ , both A and  $\alpha$  are non-negative.

**Proposition 6** Suppose that a minimal pair (S, D) with  $\kappa[D] = 2$  is derived from a # minimal pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  of type  $[\sigma * e, B; \nu_1, \dots, \nu_r]$  or (S, D) is just  $(\mathbf{P}^2, D)$  of type [d; 1] where  $d \geq 4$ . we shall show that the next relations between A and  $\alpha$  hold.

- 1. When  $\sigma = 3$  or d = 4,5,it follows that A = -1 and  $\alpha \ge -10$ .
- 2. When  $\sigma = 4$  or d = 6, it follows that  $4A = \alpha$ .
- 3. When  $\sigma = 5$  or d = 7.8 or the type is  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , it follows that  $3A = \alpha 1$ .
- 4. When  $\sigma \geq 6$  where the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , or  $d \geq 9$ , it follows that  $3A > \alpha > A$ .

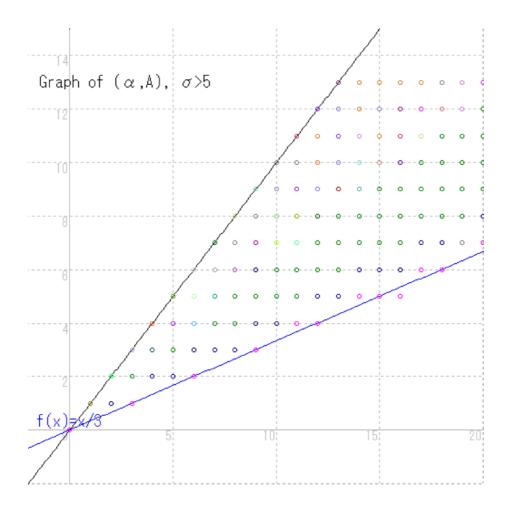


Figure 1: relations between  $\alpha$  and A

Proof: First,we consider the case where (S,D) is a pair of the projective plane and a nonsingular curve D of which type is [d;1]. Then  $A=\frac{(d-3)(d-6)}{2}$  and  $\alpha=d(d-6)$ . Hence,  $4A-\alpha=(d-6)^2, 3A-\alpha=\frac{(d-6)(d-9)}{2}$ . From these, the assertion 1) follows.

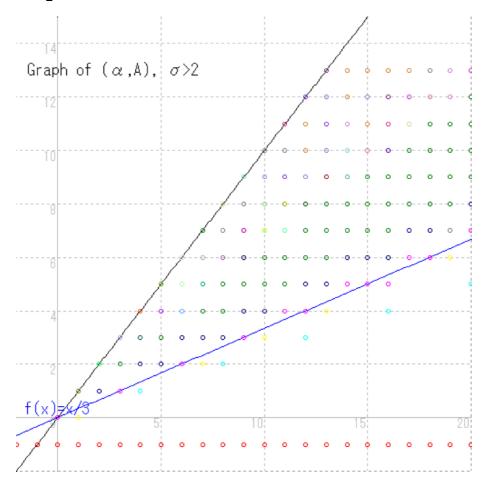


Figure 2: relations between  $\alpha$  and A

Note that  $4A-\alpha=Q=(2Z-D)^2.$  Hence, by Lemma ,  $4A-\alpha=0$  if and only if  $\sigma=4.$ 

If the type is  $[6 * 8, 1; 2^r]$ , then  $\overline{g} = 19 - r, A = 5, \alpha = 16$ .

Assume that  $\sigma \geq 6$  and the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ . Then  $3A - \alpha =$ 

$$\frac{(2Z-D)\cdot(3Z-2D)}{2}\geq 0.$$

 $\frac{(2Z-D)\cdot(3Z-2D)}{2} \ge 0.$  We shall verify that  $A \le \alpha$  under the assumption  $\sigma \ge 4$ .

Since  $K_S = Z - D$ , it follows that  $(Z - D)^2 = K_S^2$  and  $Z^2 + D^2 - 4\overline{g} = K_S^2$ . Moreover,

$$A - \alpha = Z^2 + D^2 - 5\overline{g} = K_S^2 - \overline{g}.$$

Case A):  $K_S^2 \le -1$ .

Then

$$A - \alpha = K_S^2 - \overline{q} < -q < 0.$$

Case B):  $K_S^2 \ge 0$ .

By Riemann-Roch ,  $|-K_S| \neq \emptyset$ . Hence,  $(2Z - D) \cdot (D - Z) \geq 0$ , which implies that  $2Z^2 + D^2 - 6\overline{g} \leq 0$ . Therefore,

$$A - \alpha = Z^2 + D^2 - 5\overline{g} \le \overline{g} - Z^2 = -A \le 0.$$

Suppose that  $\sigma \geq 4$  and  $A - \alpha = 0$ .

In case A): we get  $g = 0, K_S^2 = -1$ . There are many types in this case. But in case B), we get g > 0,  $A = \alpha = 0$ . Hence, the type is  $[4 * 4; 2^r] *$  or [6;1].

#### 6 relations between $\Omega$ and $\omega$

Note that  $\Omega \geq \omega$  when  $\sigma \geq 6$  except for the type  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ . Indeed, except for the type  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , since  $|3Z-2D| \neq \emptyset$  and 2Z-D is nef, we see that  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) \ge 0$  and  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 2(3Z - 2D) \cdot Z - 2D$  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot D = 2\Omega - 2\omega$ .

#### 6.1 Case $\nu_1 \leq 3$

Under the assumption that  $\nu_1 \leq 3$  and  $\sigma \geq 6$ , we shall show that  $\Omega \leq 3\omega$ provided that the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ .

By definition,

$$3\omega - \Omega = \frac{(\sigma - 1)(\tilde{B} - 2) - 50}{2} + 2t_2 = g_0 - 25 + 2t_2.$$

It is easy to check that  $(\sigma - 1)(\tilde{B} - 2) \geq 50$ , whenever the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ . Hence,

$$3\omega \geq \Omega$$
.

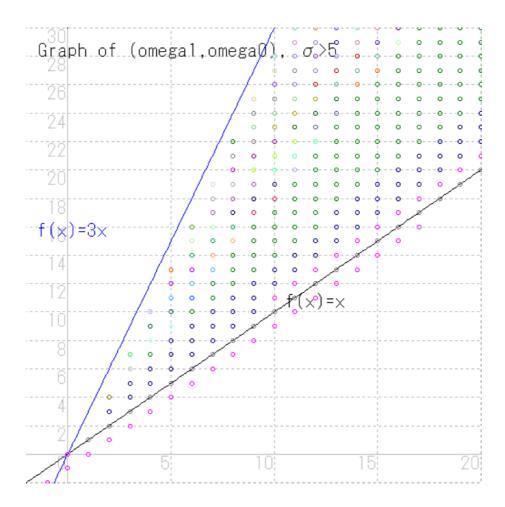


Figure 3: relations between  $\omega$  and  $\Omega$ 

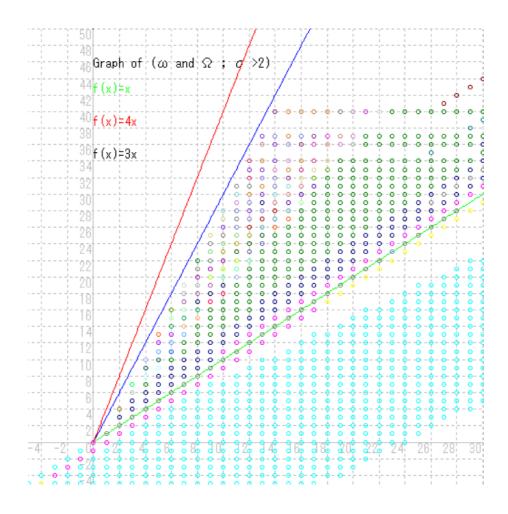


Figure 4: relations between  $\omega$  and  $\Omega$ ,  $\sigma > 2$ 

Note that if  $3\omega = \Omega$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$ . Hence,  $\omega = \Omega = 0$ . Except for these cases,  $3\omega - \Omega \ge 2$ .

Thus defining  $\Upsilon$  to be  $3\omega - \Omega$ , we shall show that  $\Upsilon \geq 2$ .

#### **6.2** Case $\nu_1 > 4$

From  $K_S^2 = (Z - D)^2 = Z^2 - 4\overline{g} + D^2 = K_S^2 \le -1$ , it follows that

$$\Omega + \overline{g} - 3\omega = 3K_S^2 \le -3.$$

Hence,  $\Upsilon = 3\omega - \Omega = \overline{g} - 3K_S^2$ .

We distinguish the following two cases:

Case A):
$$K_S^2 \le -1$$
.  
 $\Upsilon = \overline{g} - 3K_S^2 \ge 2$ .

Case B): $K_S^2 \ge 0$ .

Then since  $K_S^2 = r - 8$ , it follows that  $r \le 8, g > 0$  and  $|-K_S| \ne \emptyset$ . From  $g_0 = (\sigma - 1)(\tilde{B} - 2)/2 \ge (2\nu_1 - 1)^2$ , and  $-\nu_j(\nu_j - 1) \ge -\nu_1(\nu_1 - 1)$ , we get

$$\Upsilon = \overline{g} - 3K_S^2 = \overline{g_0} - \sum_{j=1}^r \nu_j (\nu_j - 1)/2 - 3(8 - r)$$

$$\geq 4\nu_1 (\nu_1 - 1) - r\nu_1 (\nu_1 - 1)/2 - 3(8 - r)$$

$$\geq (8 - r)\nu_1 (\nu_1 - 1)/2$$

$$\geq 3(8 - r)$$

Thus if r < 8 then  $\Upsilon > 3$ .

Suppose that r=8, namely  $K_S^2=0$ . Then we shall show  $\Upsilon=\overline{g}\geq 2$ .

(1) If  $\Upsilon = \overline{g} = 0$  then  $0 = K_S^2 = D^2 + Z^2$ . By Riemann-Roch,  $|-K_S| \neq \emptyset$ . Hence,  $|D - Z| \neq \emptyset$ . Since 2Z - D is nef,

$$(D-Z) \cdot (2Z-D) = -2Z^2 - D^2 \ge 0.$$

By  $D^2 + Z^2 = 0$ ,  $we get - Z^2 \ge 0$ , a contradiction.

(2) If  $\overline{g} = 1$  then  $0 = K_S^2 = D^2 + Z^2 - 4$ . Since 2Z - D is nef,

$$(D-Z) \cdot (2Z-D) = 6 - 2Z^2 - D^2 \ge 0.$$

By  $D^2 + Z^2 = 4$ , we get  $2 - Z^2 \ge 0$ . If  $2 = Z^2$  then  $(2Z - D) \cdot K_S = 0$ . By Hodge's index theorem, we obtain  $K_S^2 < 0$ , a contradiction.

Consequently,  $Z^2 = 1$ . By  $|D + \nu_1 K_S| \neq \emptyset$ , we get

$$(D + \nu_1 K_S) \cdot Z = (\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot Z \ge 0.$$

Since

$$(\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot Z = \nu_1 Z^2 - 2(\nu_1 - 1)\overline{g} = (2 - \nu_1) \ge 0$$

it follows that  $\nu_1 = 2$  and so  $2 = g = g_0 - r = g_0 - 8$ . Hence,  $g_0 = 10$ . But

$$(\sigma - 3)(\overline{B} - 6) = 4 - 2q + 2Z^2 = 2.$$

Hence,  $\sigma = 4, \overline{B} = 8$ . Thus  $g_0 = (\sigma - 1)(\overline{B} - 2)/2 = 9$ .

This contradicts  $q_0 = 10$ .

Combining the above argument, we establish the following result.

**Proposition 7** For minimal pairs (S,D) with  $\kappa[D] = 2$  which are derived from # minimal models of type  $[\sigma * e, B; \nu_1, \dots, \nu_r]$  or which is  $(\mathbf{P}^2, D)$  of type [d; 1], the next relations between  $\Omega$  and  $\omega$  hold.

- 1. When  $\sigma = 3$ , it follows that  $\Omega = -g 4$  and  $\omega = -9$ .
- 2. When the type is [d;1] or ,it follows that  $\Omega=(d-3)(d-9)$  and  $\omega=\frac{d(d-9)}{2};$   $3\omega-\Omega=\frac{(d+6)(d-9)}{2}.$
- 3. When the type is  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , then  $\Omega = r-4, \omega = r-3, 4\omega \Omega = 3r-8$ .
- 4. When  $\sigma \geq 6$  where the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$  or  $d \geq 9$ , it follows that  $\Upsilon = 3\omega \Omega \geq 0$ . Furthermore, if  $\Upsilon = 0$  then  $D + 3K_S \sim 0$  and  $\omega = \Omega = 0$ .
- 5. Under the above condition, if  $D + 3K_S \not\sim 0$ , then  $\Upsilon \geq 2$ .

### 7 curves with $Z^2 = 1$

Second, we shall study pairs (S, D) such that  $Z^2 = 1$  where (S, D) is derived from a # minimal pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$ . Then  $Z^2 = 1$ . Since  $P_{2,1} = Z^2 + 2 - g = 3 - g$ , we see that  $1 \le g \le 3$ .

If g > 1 then  $P_2 = Z^2 + 2g - 1 = 2g + 1$  and If g = 1 then  $P_2 = Z^2 + 2 = 3$ .

#### 7.1 case q = 2, 3

- If g=3, then  $P_2[D]=2g=6=3g-3$  and by Theorem 3,  $\sigma=3$  or d=4. If  $\sigma=g=3$ , then f=B=1; thus  $e=4, e-\sigma=1$ . Applying the transformation  $O_-(\Delta_\infty)$ , the type becomes [4;1], too. Hence, we conclude that the type of the transformed curve is [4;1].
- If g=2, then  $\nu_1\geq 2$  and so

$$0 \le (D + \nu_1 K_S) \cdot Z = \nu_1 Z^2 - 2(\nu_1 - 1)\overline{g} = 2 - \nu_1.$$

Hence,  $\nu_1 = 2$ ; thus  $\nu_1 = 2$ . Therefore,

$$K_S^2 = 8 - r$$
,  $g_0 = g + r$ ,  $D^2 = C^2 - 4r$ .

To determine the type, we use the invariant  $\tau_m$  introduced in the former section.

Applying Corollary 2 to the case in which  $Z^2 = 1$ , we obtain

$$(\sigma - 3)(\tilde{B} - 6) = 6 - 2g.$$

When g = 2, from  $(\sigma - 3)(\tilde{B} - 6) = 2$  it follows that:

$$\sigma - 3 = 1, \quad \tilde{B} - 6 = 2.$$

Thus  $\sigma=4$  and then  $g_0=9, r=7, K_S{}^2=1, D^2=4$ . According to the value of  $B=0,1,2,\,f$  becomes 4, 2, 0, respectively. Then the type becomes  $[4*4;2^7]$  or its associates.

#### 7.2 case q = 1

If g = 1, then  $Z \cdot D = 0$ . Since  $Z^2 = 1$ , we get  $Z \cdot (Z - K_S) = 0$ , and so  $Z \cdot K_S = Z^2 = 1$ . Further,  $Z^2 = K_S^2 - D^2 = 1$  implies  $K_S^2 = 1 + D^2$ . In this case,  $P_2[D] = 3$ .

#### Claim 2

$$D^2 \le -2$$
.

Actually, suppose that  $D^2 \ge -1$ . Then  $K_S^2 = 1 + D^2 \ge 0$ . By Riemann-Roch, dim  $|-K_S| \ge K_S^2 \ge 0$ . Hence,  $Z \cdot -K_S \ge 0$ ; thus  $Z \cdot K_S \le 0$ . But by hypothesis,  $1 = Z \cdot K_S$ ; a contradiction.

#### 7.3 Formula II

For a # minimal pair  $(\Sigma_B, C)$ , letting  $t_j$  denote the number of j- ple singular points of the curve C, define

 $\rho_{\nu_1}$  to be  $(D+2K_S)\cdot (D+\nu_1K_S)$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1}$  to be  $\sum_{j=3}^{\nu_1-1}(\nu_1-j)(j-2)t_j$ . Then

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = (C + 2K_0) \cdot (C + \nu_1 K_0) + \zeta_{\nu_1}.$$

Since

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = (D + 2K_S) \cdot D + \nu_1(D + 2K_S) \cdot K_S$$

it follows that  $(D+2K_S)\cdot D=(2Z-D)\cdot D=4\overline{g}-D^2$ , which we denote by  $\alpha$  and that  $(D+2K_S)\cdot K_S/2=D\cdot (Z-D)/2+K_S^2=\overline{g}-D^2/2+8-r$ , which we denote by  $\xi_0$  and hence,  $\rho_{\nu_1}=2\nu_1\xi_0+\alpha$ .

Replacing  $B\sigma + 2f$  by  $\tilde{B}$  and  $\sigma - 2\nu_1$  by p where  $p \geq 0$ , respectively, we obtain

$$(C + 2K_0) \cdot (C + \nu_1 K_0) = (C + 2K_0) \cdot (C + \frac{\sigma - p}{2} K_0)$$
$$= (C + 2K_0) \cdot (C + \frac{\sigma}{2} K_0) - \frac{p}{2} (C + 2K_0) \cdot K_0).$$

Since

$$C + 2K_0 \sim (\sigma - 4)\Delta_0 + (f + 2B - 4)F_c,$$
  
$$C + \frac{\sigma}{2}K_0 \sim (\frac{\tilde{B}}{2} - \sigma)F_c$$

it follows that

$$(C+2K_0)\cdot (C+\frac{\sigma}{2}K_0)=(\sigma-4)(\frac{\tilde{B}}{2}-\sigma),$$

which is denoted by  $-\eta$ , and that

$$(C+2K_0)\cdot K_0 = 16 - 2\sigma - \tilde{B}.$$

Thus letting  $\tilde{\sigma}$  be  $\sigma + \frac{\tilde{B}}{2} - 8$ , we obtain  $(C + 2K_0) \cdot (C + \nu_1 K_0) = -\eta + \tilde{\sigma}p$  and therefore,

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = (D + 2K_S) \cdot (D + \nu_1 K_S) - (C + 2K_0) \cdot (C + \nu_1 K_0)$$
$$= \eta + 2\nu_1 \xi_0 + \alpha - \tilde{\sigma} p = \eta + \sigma \xi_0 + \alpha - (\xi_0 + \tilde{\sigma}) p.$$

Letting

$$\xi_2 = \xi_0 + \tilde{\sigma} = \sigma + f - 8 + \frac{B\sigma}{2} + \xi_0,$$

we get

#### **Proposition 8**

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + \sigma \xi_0 + \alpha - \xi_2 p.$$

Corollary 3 Assume that  $\sigma \geq 4$ .

1. If 
$$B \neq 1$$
 then  $\eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2}) \leq 0$ .

2. If 
$$B = 1$$
 then  $\eta \leq \frac{(\sigma - 4)p}{2}$ .

Moreover, 
$$\eta - \xi_2 p \le (\frac{D^2}{2} + r - g - 1 - f - \sigma)p$$
.

Proof of 2): Since  $f \ge \nu_1 = \frac{\sigma - p}{2}$ , it follows that  $\sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2} = \frac{\sigma}{2} - f \le \frac{p}{2}$ . Hence,  $\eta \le \frac{(\sigma - 4)p}{2}$ .

#### 7.4 sharper estimate

Letting  $\tilde{\eta} = \eta - \tilde{\sigma}p$ , we get

$$\eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - \frac{\tilde{B}}{2}) 
= 2(\nu_1 - 2)(\sigma - \frac{\tilde{B}}{2}) + p(\sigma - \frac{\tilde{B}}{2}) 
= 2(\nu_1 - 2)(2\nu_1 - \frac{\tilde{B}}{2}) + p(\sigma - \frac{\tilde{B}}{2}) + 2p(\nu_1 - 2)$$

and

$$\tilde{\eta} = \eta - \tilde{\sigma}p = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(2\nu_1 - \frac{\tilde{B}}{2}) + p(4 + 2\nu_1 - \tilde{B})$$
  
=  $-2(\nu_1 - 2)\gamma_1 + \tilde{A}p$ ,

where  $\gamma_1 = (B-2)\nu_1 + f$  and  $\tilde{A} = 2f - 4 - 2\nu_1 + B(\sigma + \nu_1 - 2)$ . Then we obtain

$$\tilde{\eta} = -2(\nu_1 - 2)\gamma_1 - \tilde{A}p \le -\tilde{A}p.$$

Now assume that  $p \ge 1$  and  $\nu_1 \ge 3$ . Then since  $\tilde{A} = B(\nu_1 + \sigma - 2) - 4 - 2\nu_1 + 2f$ , it follows that

- 1. if B=0 then  $\tilde{A}=-4-2\nu_1+2f\geq -4-2\nu_1+2\sigma=-4+2\nu_1+2p\geq 2\nu_1-2$ .
- 2. If B = 1 then  $\tilde{A} > -4 2\nu_1 + 2f + 2 + 3\nu_1 + p > 3\nu_1 5 > 2\nu_1 3$ .
- 3. If  $B \ge 2$  then  $\tilde{A} \ge 6 4\nu_1 = -4 + 2\nu_1 2 + 2\nu_1 \ge 4\nu_1 6 \ge 2\nu_1 2$ .

Furthermore, since  $p \ge 1$ , it follows that when B = 0,  $\gamma_1 = -2\nu_1 + f \ge -2\nu_1 + \sigma = p \ge 1$  and hence,  $\tilde{\eta} \le -2(\nu_1 - 2) - \tilde{A}p \le 6 - 4\nu_1$ .

Hence, we get the following estimate:

**Lemma 6** If  $p \ge 1$  and  $\nu_1 \ge 3$ , then

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \tilde{\eta} + 2\nu_1 \xi_0 + \alpha$$

and

$$\tilde{\eta} \le (6 - 4\nu_1 + (\nu_1 - 1)\delta_{1,B})p,$$
  
 $\le (2 + \delta_{1,B} - 2\nu_1)p.$ 

## 7.5 case $D^2 = -2, -3, -4$

Using the formula above, we shall determine the type of pairs (S, D) in the case when  $D^2 = -2, -3, -4$ , examining the following cases, separately.

• case  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ . Since  $(2Z-D)\cdot Z = 2Z^2 - D\cdot Z = 2Z^2$  and  $(2Z-D)\cdot Z = \tau_3 - 2$ , it follows that

$$\tau_3 = (\sigma - 3)(B\sigma + 2f - 6) = 2Z^2 + 2.$$

Since  $Z^2 = 1$ it follows that  $2Z^2 + 2 = 4$  and  $\sigma - 3 = 2$  or 1.

- 1. If  $\sigma = 5$ , then 2f + 5B 6 = 2, which is impossible.
- 2. If  $\sigma = 4$ , then 2f + 4B 6 = 4; hence,  $\tilde{B} = 2f + 4B = 10$  and thus  $g_0 = (\sigma 1)(\tilde{B} 2)/2 = 12$ . This implies that  $r = 11, D^2 = 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 5 4 \cdot 11 = -4$  and the type is  $[4 * 5; 2^{11}]$  or its associates where  $D^2 = 40 44 = -4$ .
- case  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Then  $|D + 3K_S| \neq \emptyset$  and so  $(D + 3K_S) \cdot (D + 2K_S) \geq 0$ . But  $0 < (D + 3K_S) \cdot (D + 2K_S) = (3Z 2D) \cdot (2Z D) = 6 + 2D^2$ .

Hence,  $D^2 \ge -3$ .

When  $D^2 = -3$ , we get  $(D + 3K_S) \cdot (D + 2K_S) = 0$ . Since  $\nu_1 = 3$ , it follows that

$$(D+3K_S)\cdot (D+2K_S) = (C+3K_0)\cdot (C+2K_0) = \tau_5 - 2.$$

From  $(\sigma - 5)(\tilde{B} - 10) = \tau_5 = 2$ , we obtain  $\sigma - 5 = 1$  and  $\tilde{B} - 10 = 2$ . Hence,  $\sigma = 6$  and  $B\sigma + 2f = \tilde{B} = 12$ . Therefore, the type is  $[6*6; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$  or their associates. Thus, the virtual genus  $g_0 = 25$  and by genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = g_0 - g = 24$ .

Hence,  $t_2 = 3$ ,  $t_3 = 7$  and the type is  $[6 * 6; 3^7, 2^3]$  or its associates. The case when  $D^2 = -2$  will be treated in the next section.

• case  $\nu_1 \ge 4$  or  $D^2 = -2$ .

**Proposition 9** If  $\nu_1 \ge 4$ ,  $Z^2 = 1$  and g = 1, then  $Z \cdot K_S = 1$ ,  $D^2 = -2$ , r = 9 and  $K_S^2 = -1$ .

Proof: By hypothesis,  $Z \cdot K_S = Z^2 - Z \cdot D = 1 - 2\overline{g} = 1$ . From

$$0 \le (2Z - D) \cdot (\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) = 2\nu_1 + (\nu_1 - 1)D^2$$

it follows that  $D^2 \geq -\frac{2\nu_1}{\nu_1-1} \geq -\frac{8}{3}$ . Hence,  $D^2 \geq -2$ . By the Claim,  $D^2 = -2$  is derived. Hence, from  $D \cdot (D+K_S) = D^2 + D \cdot K_S = 0$ , it follows that  $D \cdot K_S = 2$ . Moreover,  $Z \cdot K_S = 1$  implies  $1 = Z \cdot K_S = D \cdot K_S + K_S^2 = 2 + K_S^2$ ; hence,  $K_S^2 = -1$  and r = 9.

In that follows, we assume  $\nu_1 \geq 3$  and  $D^2 = -2, r = 9$ . Hence,  $\xi_0 = 0, \alpha = 2$ . Assume that  $p \geq 1$ . Then by a sharper estimate,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = 2 + \tilde{\eta} \le 2 + 5 - 3\nu_1 = 7 - 3\nu_1 \le -2.$$

This is a contradiction. Therefore, p=0 and  $0 \ge \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 2 \ge 2$ .

Since  $\eta = -2(\nu_1 - 2)\gamma_1$  where  $\gamma_1 = -2\nu_1 + f + \nu_1 B$ , we have the next two cases: case (1)  $\eta = -2$  and case (2)  $\eta = 0$  by  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$ .

In case (1), it follows that  $2\nu_1 - 4 = 2$  and  $\gamma_1 = 1$ . Then  $\sigma = 6, \nu_1 = 3$ . Thus  $f = 7 - 3B, g_0 = 30$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 30 - 1 = 29$ .

Thus  $2t_3 = 20$ ; hence,  $t_2 < 0$ ; a contradiction.

In case (2),  $\gamma_1 = 0$  and then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 2$ . Thus,

$$2 = \zeta_{\nu_1} = \sum_{j=3}^{\nu_1 - 1} (\nu_1 - j)(j-2)t_j.$$

Hence,

$$2 = (\nu_1 - 3)(t_3 + t_{\nu_1 - 1}) + 2(\nu_1 - 4)(t_4 + t_{\nu_1 - 2}) + \cdots$$

Accordingly, we have the following two cases:

1. 
$$\nu_1 - 3 = 1, t_3 = 2,$$

2. 
$$\nu_1 - 3 = 2, t_3 + t_4 = 1$$
.

In case (1),  $\nu_1 = 4$ ,  $\sigma = 8$ ,  $g_0 = 49$ ,  $t_3 = 2$ ; hence,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 9, t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - 1.$$

Thus,  $t_2 = 0, t_3 = 2, t_4 = 7, f = 8 - 4BB$  and the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3^2]$  or its associates.

In case (2),  $\nu_1 = 5$ ,  $\sigma = 10$ ,  $g_0 = 81$ ,  $t_3 + t_4 = 1$ ; hence,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 9, t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - 1.$$

Thus,  $3t_5 + t_4 = 23$ ; a contradiction.

Combining these results, we establish the next result:

**Theorem 4** Suppose that  $P_2[D] = 2g \ge 2$ .

- 1. If g = 3, then  $D^2 = 16$  and the type of the curve is [4;1].
- 2. If g = 2, then  $D^2 = 4$  and the type is  $[4 * 4; 2^7]$  or its associates.
- 3. If g = 1, then
  - (a) if  $D^2 = -2$ , then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3^2]$  or its associates.
  - (b) If  $D^2 = -3$ , then the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2^3]$  or its associates.
  - (c) If  $D^2 = -4$ , then the type is  $[4*5;2^{11}]$  or its associates.

The pair defined by the curve  $y^{10} = x^2(1-x)^3$  is birationally equivalent to a # minimal pair with type  $[4*4;2^7]$  where g=2.

## 8 curves with $Z^2 = 2$

We shall study pairs (S, D) in the case when  $Z^2 = 2$ , i.e.,  $P_{2,1}[D] = Z^2 + 2 - g = 4 - g$ . Thus it follows that  $4 \ge g$ .

**8.1** case q = 2, 3, 4

If g > 1 then  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2g - 1 = 1 + 2g$ .

• If g = 4, then  $P_2[D] = 9 = 3 \cdot 4 - 3$  and so by Theorem 3,  $\sigma = 3$  and the type is [3 \* 3; 1] or [3 \* 6, 2; 1].

In the other cases,  $g \leq 3$  and  $\sigma \geq 4$ . Moreover,  $2 = Z^2 < Z_0^2$ . Actually,  $Z_0^2 = (\sigma - 2)(\sigma B + 2f - 4) \geq 4$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 \geq 2$ .

- If g = 3, then  $7 = P_2[D] = 3 \cdot 3 2$  and so by Theorem 7, the type is  $[4 * 4; 2^6]$  or its associates.
- If g = 2, then  $Z \cdot D = 2g 2 = 2$  and  $2 = Z^2 = Z \cdot D + Z \cdot K_S = 2 + Z \cdot K_S$ . Hence,  $Z \cdot K_S = 0$  and  $K_S^2 = D^2 - 2$ ,  $Q = (2Z - D)^2 = D^2$ .

Claim 3  $K_S^2 < 0$ .

Proof: Otherwise,  $K_S^2 \ge 0$  and so  $D^2 = K_S^2 + 2 \ge 2$ . By Riemann-Roch,  $\dim |-K_S| = K_S^2 \ge 0$ . Hence,  $(2Z - D) \cdot (-K_S) \ge 0$ . From this, it follows that

$$0 \ge (2Z - D) \cdot K_S = (2Z - D) \cdot (Z - D) = 2Z^2 - 3Z \cdot D + D^2 = 4 - 6 + D^2.$$

Hence,  $2 \ge D^2$ . Therefore,  $2 = D^2$ . This implies that  $(2Z - D) \cdot K_S = 0$ . Noting that  $Q = (2Z - D)^2 = D^2 = 2$ , by Hodge's index theorem, we get  $K_S \sim 0$  or  $K_S^2 < 0$ . But both cases cannot occur, because  $K_S \not\sim 0$  and  $K_S^2 \ge 0$  by hypothesis.

Since  $\nu_1 \geq 2$ , it follows that

$$0 \le (\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 4 - 2\nu_1 + (\nu_1 - 1)D^2.$$

Hence,

$$D^2 \ge \frac{2\nu_1 - 4}{\nu_1 - 1} = 2 - \frac{2}{\nu_1 - 1}.$$

Suppose that  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ . Then  $D^2 \geq 2$  and so  $K_S^2 = D^2 - 2 \geq 0$ . This is impossible due to the previous claim. Therefore,  $\nu_1 = 2, 3$  and  $D^2 = K_S^2 + 2 \leq 1$ .

If  $\nu_1=3$ , then  $D^2\geq 2-\frac{2}{\nu_1-1}=1$ . By Claim ,  $D^2=K_S^2+2\leq 1$ ; thus  $D^2=1$ . In this case,  $K_S^2=-1$  and r=9. Furthermore,  $A=Z^2-\overline{g}=1$ ,  $\alpha=4\overline{g}-D^2=3$ . Hence,  $(3Z-2D)(2Z-D)=6A-2\alpha=0$ . But by  $\nu_1\leq 3$ ,  $(3Z-2D)(2Z-D)=(3Z_0-2C)(2Z_0-C)=\tau_5-2$ . Thus  $\tau_5=2$  and so  $\sigma=6$ ,  $\tilde{B}=6B+2f=2\sigma=12$ ,  $g_0=25$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = r = 9;$$
  $t_2 + 3t_3 = g_0 - g = 23.$ 

Immediately, we get  $t_2 = 2, 3t_3 = 7$ . Hence, the type is  $[6*6; 3^7, 2^2]$  or its associates. <sup>1</sup>

If  $\nu_1 = 2$ , then

$$2 = 4 - 2 = (2Z - D) \cdot Z = \tau_3 - 2$$

hence,

$$(\sigma - 3)(\tilde{B} - 6) = \tau_3 = 4.$$

Then  $\sigma=4, \tilde{B}=10.$  Therefore, the type is  $[4*5;2^{10}]$  or its associates.

### 8.2 case q = 1

If g = 1, then  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2 = 4$  and  $Z \cdot D = 2g - 2 = 0$  and  $K_S^2 = 2 + D^2$ .

$$0 \le (\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 4\nu_1 + (\nu_1 - 1)D^2.$$

Hence,

$$D^2 \ge \frac{-4\nu_1}{\nu_1 - 1} = -4 - \frac{4}{\nu_1 - 1}.$$

### Claim 4

$$D^2 \le -3$$
.

Actually, if  $D^2 \ge -2$  then  $K_S^2 = 2 + D^2 \ge 0$ . Hence, by Riemann-Roch,  $|-K_S| \ne \emptyset$ . Since  $\sigma \ge 4$ , it follows that

$$0 \ge (2Z - D) \cdot K_S = (2Z - D) \cdot (Z - D) = 2Z^2 + D^2 = 4 + D^2.$$

Hence,  $-4 \ge D^2$ . This contradicts the hypothesis.

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>The author thanks S.Usuda who first noticed the existence of this case.

• Suppose that  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ . Then applying a corollary to Lemma 3 for  $Z^2 = 2$ , we obtain

$$(\sigma - 3)(2f + B\sigma - 6) = 6.$$

Thus letting  $i = \sigma - 3$  be a divisor of 6, we obtain

$$B(i+3) + 2f - 6 = \frac{6}{i}$$

where i = 1, 2.

- (1) If B = 0, then  $2f 6 = \frac{6}{i}$ , which implies that  $i = 1, \sigma = 4, f = 6$ .
- (2) If B = 1, then  $i + 3 + 2f 6 = \frac{6}{i}$ ,  $f \ge 2$ , which implies that i = 1, 2. Thus when i = 1, we get  $\sigma = 4$ , f = 4. While i = 2 induces  $\sigma = 5$ , f = 2.

  (3) If  $B \ge 2$ , then  $B(i + 3) + 2f 6 = \frac{6}{i} \ge 2(i + 3) + 2f 6$ , which
- implies that  $i = 1, B = 2, \sigma = 4, f = 2$ .

Therefore, the type is  $[5*7,1;2^{13}]$  or  $[4*6;2^{14}]$  or its associates. In the former case,  $D^2 = -7$  and in the latter case  $D^2 = -8$ .

• Suppose that  $\nu_1 \ge 3$ . Then  $D^2 \ge -4 - \frac{4}{\nu_1 - 1} \ge -6$ . Moreover, if  $\nu_1 \geq 6$ , then  $D^2 \geq -4$ . If  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ , then  $D^2 \geq -5$ . In what follows we shall study pairs in the cases :  $D^2 = -3, -4, -5, -6$ .

### 8.3 case $D^2 = -3$

Suppose that  $D^2 = -3$ . Then  $K_S^2 = D^2 + 2 = -1$  and so r = 9. Therefore,  $\xi_0 = -1 + 3/2 = 1/2$  and  $\alpha = 4 - 1 = 3$ . By sharper estimate,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \tilde{\eta} + \nu_1 + 3.$$

If  $p \ge 1$  then  $\tilde{\eta} \le (5 - 3\nu_1)p$ ; hence

$$\tilde{\eta} + (\nu_1 + 3)p \le (1 - 3p)\nu_1 + 5p + 3.$$

Suppose that  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ . Then  $p = 1, \nu_1 = 4$ . Hence,  $\frac{17}{2} - \frac{\sigma}{2} - f \leq 0$ . Thus the equalities hold and then  $\nu_1 = 4, \zeta_{\nu_1} = t_3 = 0, \sigma = 9, f = 4$ ; hence,  $g_0 = 24 + 36 = 60$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 9, t_3 = 0, t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 59.$$

Hence,  $5t_4 = 50$ ,  $t_4 = 10 > 9$ ; a contradiction.

Suppose that  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Then

$$(3Z-2D)(2Z-D) = (3Z_0-2C)(2Z_0-C) = \tau_5-2, (3Z-2D)(2Z-D) = 6Z^2+2D^2 = 6.$$

Hence,  $\tau_5 = 8$ . From

$$(\sigma - 5)(\tilde{B} - 10) = \tau_5 = 8$$

it follows that

$$\sigma - 5 = 2$$
,  $\tilde{B} - 10 = 4$ .

Thus

$$\sigma = 7, \tilde{B} = 14, 7B + 2f = 14.$$

This implies that the type is  $[7*7; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$  or its associates. Moreover,  $g_0 = 36$  and hence, by genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 9$$
,

$$t_2 + 3t_3 = q_0 - 1 = 35.$$

Thus,  $2t_3 = 26$ ;  $t_3 = 13$ ,  $t_2 = -4$ , which is a contradiction.

Therefore, p = 0 has been established and so Formula II becomes

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + \nu_1 + 3.$$

Supposing that  $\eta \neq 0$ , we shall derive a contradiction.

Recalling that  $\eta = -2(\nu_1 - 2)\gamma_1$ , we obtain

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + \nu_1 + 3 = -2(\nu_1 - 2)\gamma_1 + \nu_1 + 3.$$

Assume that  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ . Then from  $\zeta_{\nu_1} \geq 0$ , it follows that  $\gamma_1 = 1$ . Hence,  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 7 - \nu_1$ . Note that  $\gamma_1 = 1$  implies that  $\tilde{B} = 2(\nu_1 B + 2f) = 2 + 4\nu_1$ . Hence,  $g_0 = 2\nu_1(2\nu_1 - 1)$ .

Moreover, note that

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + \cdots$$

Thus if  $\zeta_{\nu_1} \neq 0$ , then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} \geq \nu_1 - 3$ , which implies that  $\nu_1 \leq 5$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 7$ , then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$ ,  $\sigma = 14$  and  $-10 = \eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2})$ . Thus  $g_0 = 13 \cdot 14 = 182$ ,  $t_3 = t_4 = t_5 = t_6 = 0$  and moreover,

$$r = t_2 + t_7 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 21t_7 = g_0 - g = 182 - 1 = 181$ .

But from this, it follows that  $10t_7 = 86$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 5$ , then  $\sigma = 10$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 7 - \nu_1 = 2$ . By definition,

$$2 > \zeta_{\nu_1} = 2t_3 + 2t_4$$
.

Hence,  $t_3 + t_4 = 1$ .

When  $t_3 + t_4 = 1$ , we get  $2 = \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + \nu_1 + 3 = \eta + 8$ ; thus

$$-6 = \eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2}) = 6(10 - f - 5B).$$

Hence, 11 = f + 5B and so  $g_0 = 90$ . Therefore,

$$t_3 + t_4 = 1, t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 9,$$

$$t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 90 - 1 = 89$$
.

Hence,  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 26$ . But since  $t_4 = 0$  or 1, it follows that  $3t_5 = 26, 25$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then  $\sigma = 8$  and  $t_3 = \zeta_{\nu_1} = 7 - \nu_1 = 3$ . Then  $g_0 = 2 \cdot 4 \cdot 7 = 56$ . Hence,

$$t_3 \le 3, t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 9,$$

$$t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 56 - 1 = 55$$
.

Hence,  $t_3 = 3$ ,  $t_4 = 8$ ,  $t_2 = -2$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 3$ , then

$$(3Z-2D)(2Z-D) = (3Z_0-2C)(2Z_0-C) = \tau_5-2, (3Z-2D)(2Z-D) = 6Z^2+2D^2 = 6.$$

Hence,  $\tau_5 = 8$ . From

$$(\sigma - 5)(\tilde{B} - 10) = \tau_5 = 8$$

it follows that

$$\sigma - 5 = 1, \tilde{B} - 10 = 8.$$

Thus

$$\sigma = 6, \tilde{B} = 18; 6B + 2f = 18.$$

This implies that the type is  $[6*9; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$  or its associates. Moreover,  $g_0 = 40$  and hence, by genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 40 - 1 = 39$ .

Hence,  $t_3 = 15, t_2 = -6$ ; contradiction. Therefore,  $\eta = 0$  is established.

### **8.3.1** case $\eta = 0$

 $\eta = 0$  implies that if  $\sigma > 4$ , then  $\sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2} = 0$ . In this case,  $2g_0 = (\sigma - 1)(2f + B\sigma - 2) = 2(\sigma - 1)^2$ .

From the definition of  $\zeta_{\nu_1}$ , it follows that

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \nu_1 + 3 = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + 3(\nu_1 - 5)x_3 + \cdots,$$

where

$$x_1 = t_3 + t_{\nu_1 - 1}, x_2 = t_4 + t_{\nu_1 - 2}, x_3 = t_5 + t_{\nu_1 - 3}, \cdots$$

Define a function F(n) to be  $\sum_{p=1}^{\mu} p(n-p-2)x_p$  where  $\mu = \left[\frac{n-2}{2}\right], x_p = t_{p+2} + t_{n-p}$ .

Then the values of F(n) are  $n-3, 2(n-3), 2(n-4), 3(n-5), n-3+2(n-4), \cdots$ .

**Lemma 7** If 
$$p < q \le \frac{n-2}{2}$$
, then  $p(n-p-2) < q(n-q-2)$ .

Proof: 
$$p(n-p-2) - q(n-q-2) = -(p-q)(p+q-(n-2)) < 0$$
.

Hence, when  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = \nu_1 + 3$ , from  $\nu_1 + 3 = F(\nu_1) \ge 2(\nu_1 - 4), 2(\nu_1 - 3)$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 \le 11$ . Thus, we shall study pairs in the following cases according to the value of  $\nu_1 \le 11$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 11$ , then  $\sigma = 22, g_0 = 21^2 = 441$  and

$$\nu_1 + 3 = 14 = F(11) = 8x_1 + 14x_2 + 18x_3 + \cdots$$

; thus  $x_1 = 0$  ,  $x_2 = 1$ . Since  $t_3 = t_{10} = 0$ ,  $t_4 + t_9 = 1$ ,  $t_5 = t_8 = 0$ ,  $t_6 = t_7 = 0$ , it follows that

$$t_2 + t_4 + t_9 + t_{11} = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 + 36t_9 + 55t_{11} = 440$ .

From this, we get

$$t_2 + t_{11} = 8$$
,  $5t_4 + 35t_9 + 54t_{11} = 431$ ,  $35t_9 + 54t_{11} = 431 - 5t_4$ .

Then  $54t_{11} = 426$ , or  $54t_{11} = 396$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 10$ , then

$$13 = \nu_1 + 3 = F(10) = 7x_1 + 12x_2$$

which is impossible.

• If  $\nu_1 = 9$ , then  $\sigma = 18, g_0 = 17^2 = 289$  and

$$12 = F(9) = 6x_1 + 10x_2 + 12x_3$$
.

Hence, here are two cases a) $x_1 = x_2 = 0$ ,  $x_3 = 1$ , and b)  $x_1 = 2$ ,  $x_2 = x_3 = 0$ . In case a),  $t_3 = t_8 = 0$ ,  $t_4 = t_7 = 0$ ,  $t_5 + t_6 = 1$ .

$$t_2 + t_5 + t_6 + t_9 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 10t_5 + 15t_6 + 36t_9 = 288$ .

From these,

$$9t_5 + 14t_6 + 35t_9 = 279$$
,  $5t_6 + 35t_9 = 270$ ,  $t_6 + 7t_9 = 54$ .

Since  $t_6 = 0$  or 1, then  $7t_9 = 54$  or 53; a contradiction. In case b),  $t_3 + t_8 = 2$ ,  $t_4 = t_5 = t_6 = t_7 = 0$ .

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_8 + t_9 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 28t_8 + 36t_9 = 288$ .

From these,

$$2t_3 + 27t_+ 35t_9 = 279$$
,  $5t_8 + 7t_9 = 55$ .

Since  $t_6 = 0$  or 1, 2, then  $7t_9 = 55$  or 50,45; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 8$ , then

$$11 = F(8) = 5x_1 + 8x_2 + 9x_3$$
.

There exist no solutions.

• If  $\nu_1 = 7$ , then  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13^2 = 169$  and

$$10 = F(7) = 4x_1 + 6x_2$$
.

Then  $x_1 = x_2 = 1$ ; thus  $t_3 + t_6 = 1$ ,  $t_4 + t_5 = 1$  and therefore,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 + t_6 + t_7 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 + 15t_6 + 21t_7 = 168$ .

Hence,

$$2+5+4t_5+12t_6+20t_7=159$$
,  $4t_5+12t_6+20t_7=152$ ,  $t_5+3t_6+5t_7=38$ .

Then  $t_7 = 7$ ,  $t_2 = 0$ ,  $t_4 = t_6 = 1$ ,  $t_3 = t_5 = 0$ . Thus

$$D^2 = 2 \cdot 14 \cdot 14 - 4 \cdot 4 - 6 \cdot 6 - 7 \cdot 7 \cdot 7 = -3$$

The type is  $[14 * 14; 7^7, 6, 4]$  or its associates.

• If  $\nu_1 = 6$ , then  $\sigma = 12, g_0 = 11^2 = 121$  and

$$9 = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$$
.

Thus,  $x_1 = 3$ ,  $x_2 = 0$ , i.e.  $t_4 = 0$ ,  $t_3 + t_5 = 3$  and therefore,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_5 + t_6 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 10t_5 + 15t_6 = 120$ .

Hence,

$$2t_3 + 9t_5 + 14t_6 = 111$$
,  $7t_5 + 14t_6 = 105$ ;  $t_5 + 2t_6 = 15$ .

That is,  $t_6 = 6$ ,  $t_5 = 3$ ,  $t_2 = t_3 = 0$  and so  $D^2 = 2 \cdot 12^2 - 3 \cdot 5^2 - 6 \cdot 6^2 = -3$ . The type is  $[12 * 12; 6^6, 5^3]$  or its associates.

• If  $\nu_1 = 5$ , then  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9^2 = 81$  and

$$8 = F(5) = 2x_1 = 2t_3 + 2t_4$$
.

Then  $x_1 = 4$ , i.e.  $t_3 + t_4 = 4$  and therefore,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - 1 = 80$ ,

$$12+5+3t_4+9t_5=80$$
,  $3t_4+9t_5=63$ ;  $t_4+3t_5=21$ .

But  $t_5 \le 5, t_4 \le 4$ , which contradicts  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 21$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then  $\sigma = 8$ ,  $g_0 = 7^2 = 49$  and  $\sigma = 7^2 = 49$  and

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - 1 = 48$ .

But  $5t_4 = 25$ ;  $t_4 = 5$ ,  $t_3 = -1$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 3$ , then  $\sigma = 6$ ,  $g_0 = 5^2 = 25$  and by genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 25 - 1 = 24$ .

But  $2t_3 = 24 - 9 = 15$ ; a contradiction.

### 8.4 case $D^2 = -4$

Suppose that  $D^2 = -4$ . Then  $K_S^2 = D^2 + 2 = -2$  and so r = 10.  $\xi_0 = -1 + 1 = 0$  and  $\alpha = 4$ . Moreover,  $\xi_2 = \sigma + f - 8 + \frac{B\sigma}{2}$ , and

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 4 - \xi_2 p$$
.

If  $B \neq 1$ , then  $\eta \leq 0$  and  $0 \leq \zeta_{\nu_1} \leq 4 - \xi_2 p \leq 4 - 6p$ . Hence, p = 0.

If 
$$B = 1$$
, then  $\eta - \xi_2 p \le p(-2 + 10 - \sigma - f - 2) = p(6 - \sigma - f)$ .

Supposing that p > 0, we get  $\sigma \ge 7$  and  $f \ge 3$ . Hence,  $0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 4 - \xi_2 p \le 4 - 4p$ , which implies that  $p = 1, \sigma = 7, f = 3, g_0 = 12 + 21 = 33$ . By genus formula, we get

$$t_2 + t_3 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 33 - 1 = 32$ .

Thus  $2t_3 = 32 - 10 = 22$ ;  $t_3 = 11 > 10$ ; a contradiction. Therefore, p = 0 is verified. By the formula, we get

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 4 \le 4$$
.

Hence,  $0 \le \eta + 4$ .

### **8.4.1** case $\eta \neq 0$

If  $\eta \neq 0$ , then  $\eta \leq 4 - \sigma = 4 - 2\nu_1$ .

Actually,  $\eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - f - B\sigma/2) = (2\nu_1 - 4)(2\nu_1 - f - B\nu_1) < 0$ , that is a multiple of  $2\nu_1 - 4$ .

If  $\zeta_{\nu_1} \geq 1$ , then  $\nu_1 \geq 4$  and so  $\sigma \geq 2 \times 4 = 8$ . Hence, when  $\eta \neq 0$ ,  $-\eta$  is a multiple of  $2\nu_1 - 4 \geq 4$ ; thus  $\eta = -4$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$ .

Therefore, we may assume that  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$  and then  $\eta = -4$  and  $-\eta = (2\nu_1 - 4)(2\nu_1 - f - B\nu_1)$ . Hence,

$$4 = -\eta = -(2\nu_1 - 4)(2\nu_1 - f - B\nu_1).$$

Therefore, we have two cases (1)  $\nu_1 - 2 = 2, 2\nu_1 - f - B\nu_1 = -1$ , (2)  $\nu_1 - 2 = 1, 2\nu_1 - f - B\nu_1 = -2$ .

In case (1),  $\nu_1 = 4$ ,  $t_3 = 0$ ,  $g_0 = 56$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_4 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 = 56 - 1 = 55$ .

Then  $t_2 = 1, t_4 = 9$ . The type is  $[8 * 9; 4^9, 2]$  or its associates.

In case (2),  $\nu_1 = 3$ ,  $g_0 = 35$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 35 - 1 = 34$ .

Then  $2t_3 = 24, t_3 = 12 > 10$ ; a contradiction.

### **8.4.2** case $\eta = 0$

Suppose that  $\eta = 0$ . Then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 4$  and

$$4 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + \cdots$$

From  $4 \ge \nu_1 - 3$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 \le 7$ . Therefore, we examine in the following four cases:

• If  $\nu_1 = 7$ , then  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13^2 = 169, 4 = F(7)$ . Hence,  $t_3 + t_6 = 1$  and  $t_4 = t_5 = 0$ . Thus,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_6 + t_7 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 15t_6 + 21t_7 = 169 - 1 = 168$ .

Then

$$t_2 + t_7 = 9$$
,  $2t_3 + 14t_6 + 20t_7 = 158$ ,  
 $t_3 + 7t_6 + 10t_7 = 79$ ,  $3t_6 + 5t_7 = 39$ ,  $t_6 \le 1$ .

This is impossible.

• If  $\nu_1=6$  then  $\sigma=12, g_0=11^2=121, \quad 4=F(6)=3x_1+4x_2$ . Thus,  $x_1=0$  and  $x_2=1$ ; hence,  $t_3=t_5=0, t_4=1$  and so

$$t_2 + t_4 + t_6 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 + 15t_6 = 121 - 1 = 120$ .

Therefore,

$$t_2 + t_6 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 15t_6 = 120 - 6 = 114$ .

Thus  $14t_6 = 114 - 9 = 105$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 5$  then  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9^2 = 81, 4 = 2x_1$ . Thus,  $x_1 = 2$ ; hence,  $t_3 + t_4 = 2$ .

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 80$ .

Hence,

$$t_2 + t_5 = 8$$
,  $2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 70$ ,  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 22$ .

Finally,  $t_2 = t_3 = t_4 = 1, t_5 = 7$ . Thus the type is  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3, 2]$  or its associates.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then  $\sigma = 8, g_0 = 7^2 = 49, \zeta_{\nu_1} = 4$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = t_3$ , i.e.  $t_3 = 4$ . Hence,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 48$ .

Hence,  $t_2 = 0, t_3 = 4, t_4 = 6$ . The type is  $[8 * 8; 4^6, 3^4]$  or its associates.

### 8.5 case $D^2 = -5$

Suppose that  $D^2 = -5$ . Then  $K_S^2 = D^2 + 2 = -3$  and so r = 11.  $\xi_0 = 5 + 5/2 + 1 - 11 = -1/2$  and  $\alpha = 5$ . Moreover,  $\xi_2 = \sigma + f + \frac{B\sigma}{2} - \frac{17}{2}$  and

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 5 - \frac{\sigma}{2} - \xi_2 p.$$

Suppose that  $p \geq 1, \nu_1 \geq 3$ . Then  $\sigma \geq 7$ ; hence,  $\xi_2 \geq 5$ .

If  $B \neq 1$  then  $0 \leq \zeta_{\nu_1} \leq 5 - \frac{\sigma}{2} - 5p < 0$ ; a contradiction.

If B = 1 then  $\eta \le \frac{\sigma - 4}{2}p$  and so

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le 5 - \frac{\sigma}{2} - (\xi_2 - \frac{\sigma - 4}{2})p.$$

But,  $\xi_2 - \frac{\sigma - 4}{2} = \sigma + f - \frac{13}{2} - 6 \ge 0$  and

$$5 - \frac{\sigma}{2} - (\xi_2 - \frac{\sigma - 4}{2})p \le 5 - \frac{\sigma}{2} - \sigma + f - \frac{13}{2} \le -2.$$

This implies that p = 0. In particular,  $\eta = \sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2} = \frac{\sigma}{2} - f = \nu_1 - f \le 0$ . Therefore, in both cases,  $\eta \le 0$  and hence,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta - \nu_1 + 5 \le -\nu_1 + 5.$$

• If  $\nu_1 = 5$ , then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$ ,  $\sigma = 10$ ,  $\eta = 0$ . Hence,  $t_3 = t_4 = 0$ ,  $g_0 = 81$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_5 = 11$$
,  $t_2 + 10t_5 = 81 - 1 = 80$ .

Hence,  $9t_5 = 80 - 11 = 69$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then  $\sigma = 8$ ,  $\eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - f - B\sigma/2) = 4(8 - f - 4B) = -1$  or 0. Hence,  $\eta = 0$  and thus  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = t_3 = 1$ ,  $g_0 = 49$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 11$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - 1 = 48$ .

Hence,  $5t_4 = 35, t_4 = 7, t_2 = 3$ . The type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3, 2^3]$  or its associates.

• If  $\nu_1 = 3$  then  $\sigma = 6, \zeta_{\nu_1} = 0, \eta = -2$ . Hence,  $f + 3B = 7; g_0 = 30$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 11, \quad t_2 + 3t_3 = 29.$$

Hence,  $t_3 = 9$  and  $t_2 = 2$ . The type is  $[6 * 7; 3^9, 2^2]$  or its associates.

### 8.6 case $D^2 = -6$

Suppose that  $D^2 = -6$ . Then  $\nu_1 = 3$ ,  $K_S^2 = D^2 + 2 = -4$  and so r = 12. By the same argument as before, p = 0,  $\sigma = 6$  are obtained and so  $g_0 = 5(3B + f - 1)$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 12$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = g_0 - 1$ .

Hence,  $24 \ge 2t_3 = g_0 - 13 = 15B + 5f - 18$ , which implies that  $t_3 = \frac{15B + 5f}{2} - 9 \le 12$ . Therefore,  $3B + f \le 8$  and thus the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^6]$  or its associates.

**Theorem 5** Suppose that  $Z^2 = 2$ . if g > 1,  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2g - 1 = 2g + 1$ .

- 1. If g = 4, then  $D^2 = 18$  and the type is [3 \* 3; 1] or [3 \* 6, 2; 1].
- 2. If g = 3, then  $D^2 = 8$  and the type is  $[4 * 4; 2^6]$  or its associates.
- 3. If g=2, then either (1)  $D^2=1$  and the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2]$  or (2)  $D^2=0$  and the type is  $[4*5;2^{10}]$  or its associates.
- 4. If g = 1 then  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2 = 4$ .
  - (a) If  $D^2 = -3$ , then the type is  $[14 * 14; 7^7, 6^4]$  or  $[12 * 12; 6^6, 5^3]$  or its associates.
  - (b) If  $D^2 = -4$ , then the type is  $[8*8;4^6,3^4]$  or  $[8*9;4^9,2]$  or  $[10*10;5^7,4,3,2]$  or their associates.
  - (c) If  $D^2 = -5$ , then the type is  $[6*7;3^9,2^2]$  or  $[8*8;4^7,3,2^3]$  or their associates.
  - (d) If  $D^2 = -6$ , then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^6]$  or its associates.
  - (e) If  $D^2 = -7$ , then the type is  $[5*7,1;2^{13}]$ .
  - (f) If  $D^2 = -8$ , then the type is  $[4*6; 2^{14}]$  or its associates.

# 9 curves with $Z^2 = 3$

Assume that  $P_2[D] = 3g$ . Then  $Z^2 = g + 1$  and hence,  $g + 1 = Z^2 = K_S^2 - D^2 + 4g - 4$ . First, if the type is [d; 1] then  $d = 7, g = 15, Z^2 = 16$ . Second, assume that (S, D) is derived from a # minimal model.

Defining l to be  $4g - D^2$ , we obtain  $D^2 = 4g - l$  and  $K_S^2 = 5 + g - l$ . From  $K_S^2 = 8 - r$ , it follows that r = 3 + l - g. Then by definition,

$$\xi_0 = 4 - \frac{l}{2}, \alpha = l - 4, \xi_2 = \sigma + f - 8 + \frac{B\sigma}{2} + 4 - \frac{l}{2}$$

We shall give an estimate of the magnitude of l.

**Lemma 8** If  $5 + g \ge l$  then  $l \ge 8$ .

Proof: By  $K_S^2 = 5 + g - l \ge 0$ , we have  $|D - Z| = |-K_S| \ne \emptyset$ . Hence,  $(2Z - D) \cdot (Z - D) \le 0$ . Therefore,

$$2Z^2 - 3Z \cdot D + D^2 \le 0.$$

Hence,

$$2(g+1) = 2Z^2 \le 6\overline{g} - D^2,$$

and so  $8 \le l$ .

If  $l \leq 6$  then applying the previous lemma, we get  $5+g \geq 6 \geq l$  and thus,  $l \geq 8$ ; a contradiction.

If l=7 and  $g\geq 2$  then  $5+g\geq 7=l$  and hence,  $l\geq 8$ ; a contradiction. Therefore, in the case when l=7, we may assume that g=1. Then  $Z^2=2$  and  $D^2=-7$ . By Theorem 8, the type is  $[5*7,1;2^{13}]$ .

When  $l \geq 8$ , we shall consider in the following two cases: A) case  $\nu_1 \geq 3$  and B) case  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ .

### **9.0.1** A) case $\nu_1 \geq 3$

In order to study the case when  $l \geq 8$ , we begin with the case in which  $\sigma \geq 6$ . Then  $|3Z-2D| \neq \emptyset$  by Theorem 1 and since 2Z-D is nef, it follows that

$$(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) > 0$$

and hence,

$$6Z^2 - 7Z \cdot D + 2D^2 > 0.$$

By

$$6Z^2 - 7Z \cdot D + 2D^2 = 6(g+1) - 14\overline{g} + 2(4g-l) = 20 - 2l,$$

we obtain l < 10; hence, l = 8, 9, 10.

Moreover,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + \xi_0 \sigma + \alpha - \xi_2 p$$
  
=  $\eta + (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + l - 4 - \xi_2 p$ .

To show that p=0, we assume  $p\geq 1$ . Then  $\sigma=p+2\nu_1\geq 7$  and since  $l\geq 8,$  it follows that

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} < \eta + 4\sigma + 4 - \frac{l\sigma - l}{2} + l - \sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2}$$
$$= \eta + 3\sigma - f + \frac{3l - \sigma l}{2} - \frac{B\sigma}{2}.$$

First assume  $B \neq 1$ . Then by  $\sigma \geq 7$ , we get

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} < (3 - \frac{l}{2} - \frac{B}{2})\sigma + \frac{3l}{2} - f$$
  
$$\le 21 - 2l - \frac{7B}{2} - f.$$

However, since  $l \geq 8$ , it follows that

$$21 - 2l - \frac{7B}{2} - f \le 5 - \frac{7B}{2} - f \le -2.$$

Second, assume that B=1. Then recalling that  $\sigma \geq 7, f \geq 3, B=1,$  we get

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + (l - 4) + \eta - \xi_2 p$$

$$\le (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + (l - 4) + (2 + \frac{l}{2} - f - \sigma)p$$

$$\le (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + (l - 4) + (2 + \frac{l}{2} - f - \sigma)$$

$$= \frac{3l}{2} - 2 - f + (3 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma$$

$$\le \frac{3l}{2} + 21 - 2 - f - \frac{7l}{2}\sigma$$

$$\le 19 - f - 2l \le 0.$$

Hence,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le 19 - f - 2l \le 0.$$

If  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$ , then  $l = 8, \sigma = 7, p = 1, \nu_1 = 3, \tilde{B} = 13, g_0 = 33$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = r = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = r = g_0 - g = 33 - g$ .

Hence,  $2t_2 = -2g$ . This implies that g = 0.

This is a contradiction and thus  $p = \sigma - 2\nu_1 = 0$  is checked. Therefore,

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + l - 4$$

has been established.

## **9.1** case $D^2 = 4g - 8$

Then l=8, r=3+l-g=11-g. If g=1 then  $Z^2=2, D^2=4g-8=-4$ . This case has been already treated in Theorem 5. So we may assume  $g \ge 2$ . Since  $\sigma=2\nu_1$  we get

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 4$$
.

### **9.1.1** case $\eta = 0$

If  $\eta = 0$  then  $\sigma - f - B\sigma/2 = 0$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 4$ ; hence, we obtain the equation:

$$4 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + \cdots$$

Then from  $4 \ge \nu_1 - 3$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 \le 7$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 7$  then  $x_1 = 1$  and hence,  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13^2 = 169$  and  $t_3 + t_6 = x_1 = 1, t_4 = t_5 = 0$ , which yields

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_6 + t_7 = 11 - g, t_2 + 3t_3 + 15t_6 + 21t_7 = 169 - g.$$

Thus

$$t_2+t_7=10-g, 2t_3+14t_6+20t_7=158; 6t_6+10t_7=78, 3t_6+5t_7=39, t_6\leq 1.$$

This is impossible.

• If  $\nu_1 = 6$ , then  $\sigma = 12, g_0 = 11^2 = 121$  and  $4 = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$ . Thus,  $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 1$ ; hence,  $t_3 = t_5 = 0, t_4 = 1$  and so

$$t_2 + t_4 + t_6 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 + 15t_6 = 121 - g$ .

Accordingly,

$$5t_4 + 14t_6 = 110.$$

Thus  $14t_6 = 110 - 5t_4 = 105$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 5$ , then  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9^2 = 81, 4 = F(5) = 2x_1$ . Thus,  $x_1 = 2$ ; hence,  $t_3 + t_4 = 2$  and therefore,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - g$ .

Hence,

$$2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 70, \quad t_4 + 3t_5 = 22.$$

Then  $t_4 = 1, t_3 = 1, t_5 = 7, t_2 = \varepsilon$ ; thus  $g = 2 - \varepsilon$  and the type is  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3, 2^{\varepsilon}]$  or its associates.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then  $\sigma = 8, g_0 = 7^2 = 49, \zeta_{\nu_1} = 4$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = t_3$ , i.e.  $t_3 = 4$ . Hence,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - g$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 5t_4 = 38$ ;  $t_4 = 6$ ,  $t_2 = 1 - g$ . Thus g = 1 and the type is  $[8*8; 4^6, 3^4]$  or its associates.

### **9.1.2** case $\eta \neq 0$

If  $\eta \neq 0$  then  $\eta = -4, \nu_1 = 3, 4; \zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$  and therefore, we have two cases:  $(1)\nu_1 = 3$  and  $(2) \nu_1 = 4$ .

• If  $\nu_1=3$ , then from  $\eta=-4, \eta=2(\nu_1-2)(4\nu_1-2\nu_1B-f)$ , it follows that 3B+f=8 and so  $g_0=35$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 35 - g$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 = 24$ ,  $t_3 = 12$ ,  $t_2 < 0$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then by the same argument as before,  $\zeta_4 = 0$ ,  $t_3 = 0$ , (2 - B)4 - f = -1 and  $g_0 = 56$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_4 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 = 56 - g$ .

Hence,  $5t_4 = 45$ ;  $t_4 = 9$ . And hence  $t_2 = 2 - g$  and the type is  $[8*9; 4^9, 2^{\varepsilon}], g = 2 - \varepsilon$  or its associates, where  $D^2 = 4g - 8$ .

### **9.2** case $D^2 = 4q - 9$

Suppose that  $D^2 = 4g - 9$ . Then l = 9 and r = 12 - g. Therefore,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta - \nu_1 + 5 \le -\nu_1 + 5.$$

• case  $\nu_1 = 5$  Then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0, \sigma = 10$  and  $\eta = 0$ . Hence,  $t_3 = t_4 = 0$  and  $g_0 = 81$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_5 = 12 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 10t_5 = 81 - g$ .

Hence,  $9t_5 = 81 - 12 = 69$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$  Then  $\sigma = 8, 0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 1; -1 \le \eta$ . Moreover,

$$\eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - f - B\sigma/2) = 4(8 - f - 4B) = -4, 0.$$

Hence,  $\eta = 0$  and thus  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = t_3 = 1, g_0 = 49$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 12 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - g$ .

Hence,  $5t_4 = 35$ ,  $t_4 = 7$  and  $t_2 = 4 - g$ . The type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3, 2^{4-g}]$  or its associates, where g = 1, 2, 3, 4.

• case  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$  and  $\sigma = 6, \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 2$ ; thus  $\eta = -2$ . Hence, f + 3B = 7 and  $g_0 = 30$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 12 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 30 - g$ .

Hence,  $t_3 = 9, t_2 = 3 - g$ . The type is  $[6 * 7; 3^9, 2^{3-g}]$  or its associates where g = 1, 2, 3.

### **9.3** case $D^2 = 4q - 10$

Suppose that  $D^2 = 4q - 10$ . Then l = 10, r = 13 - q,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta - 2\nu_1 + 6 \le -2(\nu_1 - 3).$$

Hence,  $\nu_1 = 3, \sigma = 6$  and  $\eta = 0, 3B + f = 6$ . Clearly,  $g_0 = 25$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 13 - q$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 25 - q$ .

Hence,  $t_3 = 6$  and  $t_2 = 7 - g$ . The type is  $[6 * 6; 3^6, 2^{7-g}]$  or its associates, where  $g = 1, 2, \dots, 7$ .

### **9.3.1** B) case $\nu_1 \leq 2$

Since  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ , it follows that

$$4 = 2(q+1) - 2\overline{q} = 2Z^2 - D \cdot Z = (2Z - D) \cdot Z = \tau_3 - 2.$$

Hence,  $\tau_3 = 6$ . From

$$(\sigma - 3)(2f + B\sigma - 6) = 6,$$

we obtain either (1)  $\sigma - 3 = 1, 2f + B\sigma - 6 = 6$  or (2)  $\sigma - 3 = 2, 2f + B\sigma - 6 = 3$ . case (1)  $\sigma = 4, 2f + B\sigma = 12, g_0 = 15$ . The type is  $[4 * 6; 2^r]$  and its associates, where  $g = 15 - r = 1, 2, \dots, 14$  and  $D^2 = 4g - 12$ .

case (2)  $\sigma=5,2f+B\sigma=9,g_0=14$  and the type is  $[5*7,1;2^r]$  , where g=14-r and  $D^2=4g-11$ .

Accordingly, we establish the following result:

**Theorem 6** Suppose that  $P_2[D] = 3g > 1$ . Then  $Z^2 = g + 1$  and

- case  $S = \mathbf{P}^2$ . Then the type is [7,1] and  $g = 15, D^2 = 49$ .
- case  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ . Then the type is (1)  $[4*6;2^r]$  or its associates, where g = 15 r and  $D^2 = 4g 12$ , or (2)  $[5*7,1;2^r]$ , where g = 14 r and  $D^2 = 4g 11$ .
- case  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ . Then
  - 1. if  $5 \ge g \ge 7$  then the type is  $[6*6;3^6,2^{7-g}]$  or its associates , where  $D^2=4g-10$ .
  - 2. If g = 4 then
    - (a) if  $D^2 = 7$  then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3]$  or its associates.
    - (b) If  $D^2 = 6$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^3]$  or its associates.
  - 3. If g = 3 then
    - (a) if  $D^2 = 2$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^4]$  or its associates.
    - (b) If  $D^2 = 3$  then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3, 2]$  or  $[6 * 7; 3^9]$  or their associates.
  - 4. If q=2 then
    - (a) if  $D^2 = 0$  then the type is either  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3]$  or  $[8 * 9; 4^9]$  or their associates.

- (b) If  $D^2 = -1$  then the type is either  $[6*7;3^9,2]$  or  $[8*8;4^7,3,2^2]$  or their associates.
- (c) If  $D^2 = -2$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^5]$  or its associates.
- 5. If g = 1 then
  - (a) if  $D^2 = -4$  then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^6, 3^4]$  or  $[8 * 9; 4^9, 2]$  or  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3, 2]$  or their associates.
  - (b) If  $D^2 = -5$  then the type is  $[6*7;3^9,2^2]$  or  $[8*8;4^7,3,2^3]$  or their associates.
  - (c) If  $D^2 = -6$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^6]$  or its associates.

When  $\sigma = 3$ , the invariants are easily computed:

$$A = Z^2 - \overline{q} = -1, \alpha = \overline{q} - 9, \omega = -9, \Omega = -3 - \overline{q}.$$

Moreover if the type is  $[d;1], d \geq 4$ , then

$$A = \frac{(d-3)(d-6)}{2}, \alpha = d(d-6), \omega = \frac{d(d-9)}{2}, \Omega = (d-3)(d-9).$$

# 10 curves with $P_{2,1}[D] = 1$

By Lemma 3, when  $\sigma \geq 4$ , we see that 2Z-D is nef and so  $(2Z-D) \cdot Z \geq 0$ . Hence,  $2Z^2 \geq D \cdot Z = 2\overline{g}$ , i.e.  $Z^2 \geq \overline{g}$ . Thus we shall study pairs (S,D) with  $Z^2 = \overline{g}$ . Hence,  $(2Z-D) \cdot Z = 0$  and  $P_{2,1}[D] = Z^2 - \overline{g} + 1 = 1$ ; Q = 0. Noting that  $\sigma \geq 4$  or  $d \geq 6$  for the type [d;1], by Lemma 3, we get  $\sigma = 4$  and  $2Z - D \sim 0$  or d = 6.

Thus

$$0 \sim 2Z - D = D + 2K_S \sim C + 2K_0 \sim (f - 4 + 2B)F_c$$
.

Hence, f-4+2B=0. Therefore, the type of the curve turns out to be  $[4*4;2^r]$  or its associates where  $r \leq 7$ . The pair is birationally equivalent to a pair of type  $[6;2^{r+1}]$ . Thus we obtain the following result.

**Theorem 7** If  $P_{2,1}[D] = 1$ , then  $A = 0, Z^2 = \overline{g}$  and the type is [6;1] or  $[4*4;2^r]$  or its associates where  $r \leq 7$ .

**Corollary 4** Under the assumption  $\sigma \geq 4$ ,  $P_{2,1}[D] = A + 1 = 1$  if and only if  $2Z \sim D$ , i.e.  $D + 2K_S \sim 0$ .

Proof:

From the formula  $P_{2,1}[D] = Z^2 - g + 2$ , the result follows immediately.

**Definition 4** If the pair (S, D) satisfies that  $D + mK_S \sim 0$ , then D is said to be an anti m- canonical curve.

The pair defined by  $y^{3m} = x^m \prod_{j=1}^m (x-j)$  has the minimal model (S, D) of type  $[2m * 3m, 1; m^5]$ , which is an anti m- canonical curve for m > 1.

So the theorem states that if  $P_2[D] = 3g - 2 > 0$ , then the curve D is anti-bicanonical.

# 11 curves with $P_{2,1}[D] = 2$

Suppose that  $P_{2,1}[D] = 2$ . Then  $Z^2 = g$  and  $Z \cdot D = 2g - 2$ . First, consider the case in which  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ .

**Lemma 9** If  $Z^2 = g + i$  where the type is [d; 1], then (d-3)(d-6) = 2i + 2.

Proof: By 
$$Z^2 = (d-3)^2$$
,  $Z \cdot D = d(d-3) = 2g-2$ , we obtain  $d(d-3) = 2g-2 = 2(d-3)^2 - 2i - 2$  and then  $(d-3)(d-6) = 2i + 2$ .

In the case when i=0, there exists no solutions. Thus we consider the case where (S,D) is derived from a # minimal pair  $(\sigma_B,C)$ . Applying Corollary 2 to the case  $Z^2=g$ , we obtain

$$\tau = (\sigma - 3)(\tilde{B} - 6) = 4.$$

Hence,  $\sigma - 3$  takes one of the following values 1, 2.

- (1) If  $\sigma = 5$ , then 5B + 2f = 8, which is impossible.
- (2) If  $\sigma = 4$ , then 4B + 2f = 10. Then (f, B) = (5, 0), (3, 1), (1, 2).  $g_0 = 12 \ge r \ge 1$ . Thus the type is  $[4 * 5; 2^r]$ , where g = 12 r.

Second, consider the case in which  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ . By  $|D+3K_S| \neq \emptyset$ , we get  $(3Z-2D)\cdot Z = (D+3K_S)\cdot Z \geq 0$  and  $(3Z-2D)\cdot Z = 3Z^2-2Z\cdot D = 3g-4g+4$ ; thus  $g \leq 4$ .

• Suppose that g = 4. Then  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot Z = 0$ . Since Z is nef and big, by Hodge's index theorem, we get  $(3Z - 2D)^2 < 0$  or  $3Z \sim 2D$ . However,

$$0 \ge (3Z - 2D) \cdot (3Z - 2D) = (3Z - 2D) \cdot (-2D),$$

$$0 \le (3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = (3Z - 2D) \cdot (-D).$$

Hence,  $(3Z-2D)\cdot(-D)=0$ . Thus,  $3Z\sim 2D$ , i.e.  $D\sim -3K_S$ . Since  $D + \nu_1 K_S \sim (\nu_1 - 3) K_S$  and  $\kappa(S, K_S) = -\infty$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Therefore,

$$0 \sim D + 3K_S \sim C + 3K_0 + \sum_{j=1}^{r} (3 - \nu_j) E_j.$$

Hence,  $\nu_1 = \cdots = \nu_r = 3$  and

$$0 \sim C + 3K_0 \sim (\sigma - 6)\Delta_{\infty} + (e - 6 - 3B)F_c$$
.

Thus  $\sigma = 6, e - 6 - 3B = 0$ ; i.e. e = 6 + 3B. Therefore,  $g_0 = 25, 25 - 3t_3 = 4$ ; hence,  $t_3 = 7$ . This implies that the type is  $[6*6;3^7]$  or its associates.

• Suppose that g=3. Then  $D \cdot Z=4$ ,  $(3Z-2D) \cdot Z=1$ ,  $(3Z-2D) \cdot D=$  $2(6-D^2)$ . Since 2Z-D is nef, it follows that

$$(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) \ge 0$$
,  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 2 - 12 + 2D^2$ .

Hence,  $D^2 > 5$ .

On the other hand,  $3 = Z^2 = K_S^2 - D^2 + 8$ ; thus  $K_S^2 = D^2 - 5 \ge 0$ . Hence, by Riemann-Roch, we get  $|-K_S| \neq \emptyset$  and so

$$0 \le (-K_S) \cdot (2Z - D) = (D - Z) \cdot (2Z - D) = 6 - D^2.$$

Thus  $D^2 \leq 6$ . Combining the previous results with  $D^2 \geq 5$ , we obtain  $D^2 = 5, 6.$ 

#### case $D^2 = 6$ 11.1

Then  $K_S^2 = 1, r = 7$ ; thus  $\xi_0 = 7 - 3 + 3 - 7 = 0$ ,  $\alpha = 8 - 6 = 2$ , and  $\xi_2 = \sigma + f - 1 + \frac{B\sigma}{2} + g - \frac{D^2}{2} - r = \sigma + f + \frac{B\sigma}{2} - 8$ . We shall verify that p = 0. Actually, suppose that  $p \ge 1$ .

$$\sigma + f - 8 + \frac{B\sigma}{2} \ge 8$$
, provided

 $\sigma + f - 8 + \frac{B\sigma}{2} \ge 8$ , provided If  $B \ne 1$  then  $\xi_2 \ge 6, 0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le 2 - 6p < 0$ ; a contradiction.

If B = 1 then  $\eta - \xi_2 p \le (3 + 7 - 4 - f - \sigma)p \le -4p$ . Thus  $0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} < 1$ 2-4p<0; a contradiction.

Therefore, p = 0 and so by the formula,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 2 \le 2$$
.

If  $\eta = 0$  then

$$2 = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + \cdots$$

We have the following cases:

1)  $\nu_1 - 3 = 2, x_1 = t_4 + t_3 = 1$ . Then  $\nu_1 = 5, \sigma = 10$  and  $g_0 = 81$ . Moreover,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 7$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - 3 = 78$ .

Thus  $t_2 + t_5 = 6,3t_4 + 9t_5 = 69$ ; hence,  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 23$ . A contradiction.

2) 
$$\nu_1 - 3 = 1, t_3 = 2$$
. Then  $\nu_1 = 4, \sigma = 8$  and  $g_0 = 49$ . Further,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 7$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - 3 = 46$ .

Thus  $t_2 + t_4 = 5, 2t_3 + 5t_4 = 39$ ; hence,  $5t_4 = 39 - 4 = 35, t_4 = 7$ ; a contradiction.

If  $\eta < 0$  then by  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ , we see that  $\sigma - 4 \geq 2$  and so  $\eta = -2, \zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$ . Then 6 - f - 3B = -1. Hence,  $g_0 = 30$ . But  $t_2 + t_3 = 7$  and  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 7$ 30 - 3 = 27; a contradiction.

## 11.2 case $D^2 = 5$

Then  $K_S^2 = 0$  and r = 8; thus  $\xi_0 = 7 - 5/2 + 3 - 8 = -1/2$ ,  $\alpha = 8 - 5 = 0$  $3, \xi_2 = \sigma + f - 8 + \frac{B\sigma}{2} - \frac{1}{2}.$  Suppose that  $p \ge 1$ .

Since  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ , it follows that  $\xi_2 \geq \frac{3}{2}$ . If  $B \neq 1$  then  $0 \leq \zeta_{\nu_1} \leq 3 - \frac{\sigma}{2} - \frac{3}{2} < 0$ ; a contradiction.

If B=1 then  $0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le 3 - \frac{\bar{\sigma}}{2} - \frac{\bar{7}}{2} < 0$ ; a contradiction. Therefore, p=0 and so by the formula, we obtain

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta - \frac{\sigma}{2} + 3 \le 3 - \nu_1.$$

Thus  $\nu_1 = 3, \sigma = 6, \zeta_{\nu_1} = 0, g_0 = 25$ ; hence,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 8$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 25 - 3 = 22$ .

Then  $t_2 = 1, t_3 = 7$  and the type is  $[6 * 6; 3^7, 2]$  or its associates.

- Suppose that g = 2. Then  $Z^2 = 2$  and the type is  $[4 * 5; 2^{10}]$  or its associates, where  $D^2 = 4g 8 = 0$ . This case has been already treated in Theorem 5.
  - Suppose that g=1. Then  $Z^2=1$  and
  - 1. if  $D^2 = -4$  then the type is  $[4*5;2^{11}]$  or its associates, where  $D^2 = 4g 8 = -4$ .
  - 2. If  $D^2 = -3$  then the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2^3]$  or its associates , where  $D^2 = 4q 7 = -3$ .
  - 3. If  $D^2=-2$  then the type is  $[8*8;4^7,3^2]$  or its associates , where  $D^2=4g-6=-2$ .

These case have been already treated in Theorem 5.

**Theorem 8** Suppose that  $P_{2,1}[D] = 2$ . Then  $Z^2 = g$  and

- 1. if  $D^2 = 4g 8$ , then the type is  $[4 * 5; 2^r]$  or its associates, where g = 12 r > 0.
- 2. If  $D^2 = 4g 7$ , then the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2^{\varepsilon}]$  or its associates, where  $g = 4 \varepsilon > 0$ .
- 3. If  $D^2 = 4g 6$ , then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3^2]$  or its associates.

# 12 curves with $P_{2,1}[D] = 3$

Assume that  $P_{2,1}[D] = 3$ . Then  $Z^2 = g + 1$  and hence, First, if the type is [d;1] then  $d = 7, g = 15, Z^2 = 16$ . Second, assume that (S,D) is derived from a #- minimal model.

Defining l to be  $4g - D^2$ , we obtain  $D^2 = 4g - l$  and  $K_S^2 = 5 + g - l$ . From  $K_S^2 = 8 - r$ , it follows that r = 3 + l - g. Then by definition,

$$\xi_0 = 4 - \frac{l}{2}, \alpha = l - 4, \xi_2 = \sigma + f - 8 + \frac{B\sigma}{2} + 4 - \frac{l}{2}$$

We shall give an estimate of the magnitude of l.

Lemma 10 If  $5 + g \ge l$  then  $l \ge 8$ .

Proof: By  $K_S^2 = 5 + g - l \ge 0$ , we have  $|D - Z| = |-K_S| \ne \emptyset$ . Hence,  $(2Z - D) \cdot (Z - D) \le 0$ . Therefore,

$$2Z^2 - 3Z \cdot D + D^2 \le 0.$$

Hence,

$$2(g+1) = 2Z^2 \le 6\overline{g} - D^2,$$

and so  $8 \le l$ .

If  $l \leq 6$  then applying the previous lemma, we get  $5+g \geq 6 \geq l$  and thus,  $l \geq 8$ ; a contradiction.

If l=7 and  $g \ge 2$  then  $5+g \ge 7=l$  and hence,  $l \ge 8$ ; a contradiction.

Therefore, in the case when l=7, we may assume that g=1. Then  $Z^2=2$  and  $D^2=-7$ . By Theorem 8, the type is  $[5*7,1;2^{13}]$ .

When  $l \geq 8$ , we shall consider in the following two cases: A) case  $\nu_1 \geq 3$  and B) case  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ .

### **12.0.1** A) case $\nu_1 \geq 3$

In order to study the case when  $l \geq 8$ , we begin with the case in which  $\sigma \geq 6$ . Then  $|3Z-2D| \neq \emptyset$  by Theorem 1 and since 2Z-D is nef, it follows that

$$(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) > 0,$$

and hence,

$$6Z^2 - 7Z \cdot D + 2D^2 \ge 0.$$

By

$$6Z^{2} - 7Z \cdot D + 2D^{2} = 6(g+1) - 14\overline{g} + 2(4g-1) = 20 - 2l,$$

we obtain  $l \leq 10$ ; hence, l = 8, 9, 10.

Moreover,

$$\begin{split} 0 &\leq \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + \xi_0 \sigma + \alpha - \xi_2 p \\ &= \eta + (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + l - 4 - \xi_2 p. \end{split}$$

To show that p=0, we assume  $p\geq 1$ . Then  $\sigma=p+2\nu_1\geq 7$  and since  $l\geq 8$ , it follows that

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} < \eta + 4\sigma + 4 - \frac{l\sigma - l}{2} + l - \sigma - f - \frac{B\sigma}{2}$$
$$= \eta + 3\sigma - f + \frac{3l - \sigma l}{2} - \frac{B\sigma}{2}.$$

First assume  $B \neq 1$ . Then by  $\sigma \geq 7$ , we get

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} < (3 - \frac{l}{2} - \frac{B}{2})\sigma + \frac{3l}{2} - f$$
  
$$\le 21 - 2l - \frac{7B}{2} - f.$$

However, since  $l \geq 8$ , it follows that

$$21 - 2l - \frac{7B}{2} - f \le 5 - \frac{7B}{2} - f \le -2.$$

Second, assume that B=1. Then recalling that  $\sigma \geq 7, f \geq 3, B=1,$  we get

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + (l - 4) + \eta - \xi_2 p$$

$$\le (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + (l - 4) + (2 + \frac{l}{2} - f - \sigma)p$$

$$\le (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + (l - 4) + (2 + \frac{l}{2} - f - \sigma)$$

$$= \frac{3l}{2} - 2 - f + (3 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma$$

$$\le \frac{3l}{2} + 21 - 2 - f - \frac{7l}{2}\sigma$$

$$< 19 - f - 2l < 0.$$

Hence,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le 19 - f - 2l \le 0.$$

If  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$ , then  $l = 8, \sigma = 7, p = 1, \nu_1 = 3, \tilde{B} = 13, g_0 = 33$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = r = 11 - q$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = r = q_0 - q = 33 - q$ .

Hence,  $2t_2 = -2g$ . This implies that g = 0.

This is a contradiction and thus  $p = \sigma - 2\nu_1 = 0$  is checked. Therefore,

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + (4 - \frac{l}{2})\sigma + l - 4$$

has been established.

# **12.1** case $D^2 = 4g - 8$

Then l=8, r=3+l-g=11-g. If g=1 then  $Z^2=2, D^2=4g-8=-4$ . This case has been already treated in Theorem 5. So we may assume  $g \ge 2$ . Since  $\sigma=2\nu_1$  we get

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 4$$
.

### **12.1.1** case $\eta = 0$

If  $\eta = 0$  then  $\sigma - f - B\sigma/2 = 0$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 4$ ; hence, we obtain the equation:

$$4 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + \cdots$$

Then from  $4 \ge \nu_1 - 3$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 \le 7$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 7$  then  $x_1 = 1$  and hence,  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13^2 = 169$  and  $t_3 + t_6 = x_1 = 1, t_4 = t_5 = 0$ , which yields

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_6 + t_7 = 11 - g, t_2 + 3t_3 + 15t_6 + 21t_7 = 169 - g.$$

Thus

$$t_2+t_7=10-g, 2t_3+14t_6+20t_7=158; 6t_6+10t_7=78, 3t_6+5t_7=39, t_6\leq 1.$$

This is impossible.

• If  $\nu_1 = 6$ , then  $\sigma = 12, g_0 = 11^2 = 121$  and  $4 = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$ . Thus,  $x_1 = 0, x_2 = 1$ ; hence,  $t_3 = t_5 = 0, t_4 = 1$  and so

$$t_2 + t_4 + t_6 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 + 15t_6 = 121 - g$ .

Accordingly,

$$5t_4 + 14t_6 = 110$$
.

Thus  $14t_6 = 110 - 5t_4 = 105$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 5$ , then  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9^2 = 81, 4 = F(5) = 2x_1$ . Thus,  $x_1 = 2$ ; hence,  $t_3 + t_4 = 2$  and therefore,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 11 - q$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - q$ .

Hence,

$$2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 70, \quad t_4 + 3t_5 = 22.$$

Then  $t_4 = 1, t_3 = 1, t_5 = 7, t_2 = \varepsilon$ ; thus  $g = 2 - \varepsilon$  and the type is  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3, 2^{\varepsilon}]$  or its associates.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then  $\sigma = 8, g_0 = 7^2 = 49, \zeta_{\nu_1} = 4$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = t_3$ , i.e.  $t_3 = 4$ . Hence,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - g$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 5t_4 = 38$ ;  $t_4 = 6$ ,  $t_2 = 1 - g$ . Thus g = 1 and the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^6, 3^4]$  or its associates.

### **12.1.2** case $\eta \neq 0$

If  $\eta \neq 0$  then  $\eta = -4, \nu_1 = 3, 4; \zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$  and therefore, we have two cases:  $(1)\nu_1 = 3$  and  $(2) \nu_1 = 4$ .

• If  $\nu_1=3$ , then from  $\eta=-4, \eta=2(\nu_1-2)(4\nu_1-2\nu_1B-f)$ , it follows that 3B+f=8 and so  $g_0=35$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 35 - g$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 = 24$ ,  $t_3 = 12$ ,  $t_2 < 0$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then by the same argument as before,  $\zeta_4 = 0$ ,  $t_3 = 0$ , (2 - B)4 - f = -1 and  $g_0 = 56$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_4 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 = 56 - g$ .

Hence,  $5t_4 = 45$ ;  $t_4 = 9$ . And hence  $t_2 = 2 - g$  and the type is  $[8*9; 4^9, 2^{\varepsilon}], g = 2 - \varepsilon$  or its associates, where  $D^2 = 4g - 8$ .

## **12.2** case $D^2 = 4g - 9$

Suppose that  $D^2 = 4g - 9$ . Then l = 9 and r = 12 - g. Therefore,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta - \nu_1 + 5 \le -\nu_1 + 5.$$

• case  $\nu_1 = 5$  Then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0, \sigma = 10$  and  $\eta = 0$ . Hence,  $t_3 = t_4 = 0$  and  $g_0 = 81$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_5 = 12 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 10t_5 = 81 - g$ .

Hence,  $9t_5 = 81 - 12 = 69$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$  Then  $\sigma = 8, 0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 1; -1 \le \eta$ . Moreover,

$$\eta = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma - f - B\sigma/2) = 4(8 - f - 4B) = -4, 0.$$

Hence,  $\eta = 0$  and thus  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = t_3 = 1, g_0 = 49$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 12 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - g$ .

Hence,  $5t_4 = 35$ ,  $t_4 = 7$  and  $t_2 = 4 - g$ . The type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3, 2^{4-g}]$  or its associates, where g = 1, 2, 3, 4.

• case  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Then  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$  and  $\sigma = 6, \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta + 2$ ; thus  $\eta = -2$ . Hence, f + 3B = 7 and  $g_0 = 30$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 12 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 30 - g$ .

Hence,  $t_3 = 9, t_2 = 3 - g$ . The type is  $[6 * 7; 3^9, 2^{3-g}]$  or its associates where g = 1, 2, 3.

**12.3** case  $D^2 = 4q - 10$ 

Suppose that  $D^2 = 4q - 10$ . Then l = 10, r = 13 - q,

$$0 < \zeta_{\nu_1} = \eta - 2\nu_1 + 6 < -2(\nu_1 - 3).$$

Hence,  $\nu_1 = 3$ ,  $\sigma = 6$  and  $\eta = 0$ , 3B + f = 6. Clearly,  $g_0 = 25$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 13 - q$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 25 - q$ .

Hence,  $t_3 = 6$  and  $t_2 = 7 - g$ . The type is  $[6 * 6; 3^6, 2^{7-g}]$  or its associates, where  $g = 1, 2, \dots, 7$ .

### **12.3.1** B) case $\nu_1 \leq 2$

Since  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ , it follows that

$$4 = 2(g+1) - 2\overline{g} = 2Z^2 - D \cdot Z = (2Z - D) \cdot Z = \tau_3 - 2.$$

Hence,  $\tau_3 = 6$ . From

$$(\sigma - 3)(2f + B\sigma - 6) = 6,$$

we obtain either (1)  $\sigma - 3 = 1, 2f + B\sigma - 6 = 6$  or (2)  $\sigma - 3 = 2, 2f + B\sigma - 6 = 3$ . case (1)  $\sigma = 4, 2f + B\sigma = 12, g_0 = 15$ . The type is  $[4 * 6; 2^r]$  and its associates, where  $g = 15 - r = 1, 2, \dots, 14$  and  $D^2 = 4g - 12$ .

case (2)  $\sigma=5, 2f+B\sigma=9, g_0=14$  and the type is  $[5*7,1;2^r]$  , where g=14-r and  $D^2=4g-11$ .

Accordingly, we establish the following result:

**Theorem 9** Suppose that  $P_2[D] = 3g > 1$ . Then  $Z^2 = g + 1$  and

- case  $S = \mathbf{P}^2$ . Then the type is [7,1] and  $g = 15, D^2 = 49$ .
- case  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ . Then the type is (1)  $[4*6;2^r]$  or its associates, where g = 15 r and  $D^2 = 4g 12$ , or (2)  $[5*7,1;2^r]$ , where g = 14 r and  $D^2 = 4g 11$ .
- case  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ . Then
  - 1. if  $5 \ge g \ge 7$  then the type is  $[6*6;3^6,2^{7-g}]$  or its associates , where  $D^2=4g-10$ .
  - 2. If g = 4 then
    - (a) if  $D^2 = 7$  then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3]$  or its associates.
    - (b) If  $D^2 = 6$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^3]$  or its associates.
  - 3. If g = 3 then
    - (a) if  $D^2 = 2$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^4]$  or its associates.
    - (b) If  $D^2 = 3$  then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3, 2]$  or  $[6 * 7; 3^9]$  or their associates.
  - 4. If q=2 then
    - (a) if  $D^2 = 0$  then the type is either  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3]$  or  $[8 * 9; 4^9]$  or their associates.

- (b) If  $D^2 = -1$  then the type is either  $[6*7;3^9,2]$  or  $[8*8;4^7,3,2^2]$  or their associates.
- (c) If  $D^2 = -2$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^5]$  or its associates.
- 5. If g = 1 then
  - (a) if  $D^2 = -4$  then the type is  $[8*8;4^6,3^4]$  or  $[8*9;4^9,2]$  or  $[10*10;5^7,4,3,2]$  or their associates.
  - (b) If  $D^2 = -5$  then the type is  $[6*7; 3^9, 2^2]$  or  $[8*8; 4^7, 3, 2^3]$  or their associates.
  - (c) If  $D^2 = -6$  then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^6]$  or its associates.

When  $\sigma = 3$ , the invariants are easily computed:

$$A = Z^2 - \overline{g} = -1, \alpha = \overline{g} - 9, \omega = -9, \Omega = -3 - \overline{g}.$$

Moreover if the type is  $[d;1], d \geq 4$ , then

$$A = \frac{(d-3)(d-6)}{2}, \alpha = d(d-6), \omega = \frac{d(d-9)}{2}, \Omega = (d-3)(d-9).$$

# 13 curves with Q = 1, 2

Here, Q denotes  $(2Z - D)^2$ .

**Proposition 10** Assume that Q = 1. Then

- 1. (S,D) is obtained from a plane curve of degree 7 with at most double points and  $g = 15 r \le 15$  or
- 2. the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2^{\varepsilon}]$  or its associates, where  $g=4-\varepsilon$  or
- 3. the type is [5; 1] or
- 4. the type is [3\*5,1;1].

Assume that Q = 2. Then

- 1. the type is  $[8*8;4^7,3^2]$  or its associates or
- 2. the type is  $[6*6;3^6,2^\varepsilon]$  or its associates , where  $g=7-\varepsilon$  and  $D^2=4g-10$  or

- 3. the type is  $[5*5;2^r]$  or  $[5*10,2;2^r]$  or their associates, where g=16-rand  $D^2 = 50 - 4r = 4a - 14$  or
- 4. the type is [3\*3;1].

Proof: First suppose that  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ . By  $Q = (2Z - D)^2$ , we get

$$0 \le (3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D)$$
  
=  $(4Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) - Z \cdot (2Z - D)$   
=  $2w - Z \cdot (2Z - D)$ .

Since  $1 < Z \cdot (2Z - D)$ , it follows that

$$0 \le (3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 2w - Z \cdot (2Z - D) < 2w.$$

Suppose that Q=1. Then  $Z \cdot (2Z-D)=2$ ; hence,  $Z^2=q$ ,  $D^2=4q-7$ . By Theorem 8, the type is  $[6*6; 3^7, 2^{\varepsilon}]$  and  $g = 4 - \varepsilon$ .

Suppose that Q=2. Then we have two cases (1)  $Z \cdot (2Z-D)=2$  and  $(2) Z \cdot (2Z - D) = 4.$ 

case (1)  $Z \cdot (2Z - D) = 2$ . Then,  $Z^2 = q$  and  $D^2 = 4q - 6$ . By Theorem 8 the type is  $[8*8;4^7,3^2]$  or its associates, where g=1.

case (2)  $Z \cdot (2Z - D) = 4$ . Then,  $Z^2 = g + 1$ ,  $D^2 = 4g - 10$ . By Theorem 9, the type is  $[6*6;3^6,2^{\varepsilon}]$  or its associates, where  $g=7-\varepsilon>0$ .

Second, suppose that  $\nu_1 \leq 2$  and (S, D) is obtained from  $(\Sigma_B, C)$  which is # minimal. Then  $Q = (2Z - D)^2 = \tau_4$ . Note that

$$\tau_4 = (\sigma - 4)(B\sigma + 2f - 8).$$

If Q = 1, then either 1)  $\sigma - 4 = 1, B = 1, f = 2$  and the type is  $[5 * 7, 1; 2^r]$ where  $g_0 = 24 - 10 = 14, g = 14 - r$  or 2)  $\sigma - 4 = -1, B = 1, f = 2$  and the type is [3\*5,1;1] where  $g_0 = g = 9$ .

If 
$$Q = 2$$
, then  $\sigma - 4 = i$  and  $B(i + 4) + 2f - 8 = \frac{2}{i}$ .

When B=0, we obtain either 1)  $i=1, \sigma=f=5$  and the type is  $[5*5;2^r]$  and  $g_0 = 16$ , or 2)  $i = -1, \sigma = f = 3$  and the type is [3\*3;1] and  $g_0 = g = 4,$ 

When B=1, we obtain  $i+2f=\frac{2}{i}$ . This case cannot occur. When  $B\geq 2$ , we obtain  $i=1, f=0, B=2, \sigma=f=5$ . Thus the type

is  $[5*10,2;2^r]$  and g=16-r.

Finally, suppose that the type of (S, D) is [d; 1]. From 2Z - D = (d-6)H, it follows that  $(d-6)^2H^2=Q=1,2$ . Then Q=1 and d=5 or d=7.

### 13.1 Formula II'

Since

$$D + \nu_1 K_S \sim C + \nu_1 K_0 + \sum_{j=1}^r (\nu_1 - \nu_j) E_j,$$

it follows that

$$(D+\nu_1K_S)\cdot(D+2K_S)=(\nu_1Z_0-(\nu_1-1)C)\cdot(2Z_0-C)+\sum_{j=1}^r(\nu_1-\nu_j)(\nu_j-2).$$

Put

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = (D + \nu_1 K_S) \cdot (D + 2K_S), \quad \theta_{\nu_1} = (\nu_1 Z_0 - (\nu_1 - 1)C) \cdot (2Z_0 - C),$$

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \sum_{j=1}^r (\nu_1 - \nu_j)(\nu_j - 2).$$

Making use of the symbol  $t_j$  which denotes the number of j- ple singular points of the curve C,  $\zeta_{\nu_1}$  can be rewritten as follows:

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = \sum_{j=3}^{\nu_1-1} (\nu_1 - j)(j-2)t_j.$$

By Lemma 3, we obtain the next result:

Lemma 11 (Formula II') Let  $\rho_{\nu_1} = (D + \nu_1 K_S) \cdot (D + 2K_S)$ . Then

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = 2\nu_1 K_S^2 - (\nu_1 + 1)D^2 + 2(2 + \nu_1)\overline{g},$$

and

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = \zeta_{\nu_1} + \theta_{\nu_1}, \quad \theta_{\nu_1} = \tilde{A}(\sigma - 2\nu_1) + \gamma$$

where 
$$\tilde{A} = (\sigma + \nu_1 - 2)B + 2f - 2\nu_1 - 4$$
 and  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1)$ .

Corollary 5 If  $p = \sigma - 2\nu_1 > 0$ , then  $\tilde{A} + \gamma \geq 3\nu_1 - 5$ . Moreover, if  $\tilde{A} + \gamma = 3\nu_1 - 5$ , then B = 1 and  $\sigma - 2\nu_1 = 1$ .

Proof: If 
$$B = 0$$
 then  $\tilde{A} = 2f - 2\nu_1 - 4 \ge 2(p + 2\nu_1) - 2\nu_1 - 4 \ge 2\nu_1 - 2$  and  $\frac{\gamma}{2\nu_1 - 4} = f - 2\nu_1 \ge p \ge 1$ . Hence,  $\tilde{A} + \gamma \ge 2\nu_1 - 2 + 2\nu_1 - 4 = 4\nu_1 - 6$ . If  $B = 1$  then

$$\tilde{A} = \sigma + \nu_1 - 2 + 2f - 2\nu_1 - 4 = p + 2\nu_1 + \nu_1 - 2 + 2f - 2\nu_1 - 4 \ge 3\nu_1 - 5$$

and 
$$\frac{\gamma}{2\nu_1-4}=f+\nu_1-2\nu_1\geq 0$$
. Hence, in particular,  $\tilde{A}+\gamma\geq 3\nu_1-5$ . If  $B\geq 2$  then

$$\tilde{A} \ge 2(\sigma + \nu_1 - 2) + 2f - 2\nu_1 - 4 \ge 4\nu_1 - 6$$
 and  $\frac{\gamma}{2\nu_1 - 4} = f + (B - 2)\nu_1 \ge 0$ .

### Lemma 12

$$(\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot (2Z - D) = \tau_{\nu_1 + 2} - 2(\nu_1 - 2)^2 + \zeta_{\nu_1}.$$

Proof: From

$$(\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot Z = \tau_{\nu_1 + 1} - 2(\nu_1 - 1)^2 + \widetilde{\delta}(\nu_1),$$
  
$$(\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot D = \tau_{\nu_1} - 2\nu_1^2 + \widetilde{\delta}_0(\nu_1),$$

and

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = 2\widetilde{\delta}(\nu_1) - \widetilde{\delta}_0(\nu_1),$$

it follows that

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = (\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot (2Z - D)$$

$$= 2\tau_{\nu_1 + 1} - 4(\nu_1 - 1)^2 + 2\widetilde{\delta}(\nu_1) - (\tau_{\nu_1} - 2\nu_1^2 + \widetilde{\delta}_0(\nu_1))$$

$$= 2\tau_{\nu_1 + 1} - \tau_{\nu_1} - 2(\nu_1 - 2)^2 + 4 + \zeta_{\nu_1}$$

$$= \tau_{\nu_1 + 2} - 2(\nu_1 - 2)^2 + \zeta_{\nu_1}.$$

In particular,  $\theta_{\nu_1} = \tau_{\nu_1+2} - 2(\nu_1 - 2)^2$ .

### 14 rational curves

In what follows, we shall study minimal pairs (S,D) with  $\kappa[D]=2$  and g(D)=0. In this case,  $\sigma\geq 4, \beta=-D^2\geq 5$  and  $K_{\beta}=K_S+(1-\frac{2}{\beta})D$  is nef and big. Moreover,  $P_2[D]\geq 2$  and  $K_{\beta}^2=K_S^2-\beta+4-\frac{4}{\beta}>0$ .

Since  $\sigma \geq 4$ , the next result has been proved in Proposition 3 for non-rational curves.

**Lemma 13** If g(D) = 0 then  $2Z - D = D + 2K_S$  is neg.

Proof: First note that  $(D + 2K_S) \cdot D = -\beta + 2(\beta - 2) = \beta - 4 \ge 1$ . If there exists an irreducible curve  $A \ne D$  such that  $(D + 2K_S) \cdot A < 0$ , then  $A^2 < 0$ ,  $A \cdot K_S < -A \cdot D/2 \le 0$ . Hence, A turns out to be an exceptional curve and  $A \cdot D < -2A \cdot K_S = 2$ ; thus  $A \cdot D < 2$ . This contradicts the minimality of (S, D).

**Lemma 14**  $K_S^2 \le -1$  and  $Z^2 \le \beta - 5$ .

Proof: Suppose that  $8-r=K_S^2\geq 0$ . Then by Riemann-Roch,  $|-K_S|\neq \emptyset$ . Since  $D+2K_S$  is nef, it follows that  $(D+2K_S)\cdot K_S\leq 0$  and so

$$(D+2K_S) \cdot K_S = \beta - 2 + 2(8-r) \le 0.$$

Hence,

$$\beta - 2 + 2(8 - r) = 14 - 2r + \beta \le 0,$$

thus  $7 + \frac{5}{2} \le 7 + \frac{\beta}{2} \le r$ . Hence,  $10 \le r$ . This contradicts the inequality  $8 - r = K_S^2 \ge 0$ .

Moreover, from  $(Z - D)^2 = K_S^2 \le -1$ , the result follows immediately.

**Proposition 11** If g(D) = 0 then  $Q = 4Z^2 - 8 - \beta = 4K_S^2 + 3\beta - 8 \ge 0$ . Moreover,  $4Z^2 - 8 - \beta = 0$  if and only if  $\sigma = 4$ .

Proof: Since 2Z-D is nef and  $|2Z-D| \neq \emptyset$ , it follows that  $Q = (2Z-D)^2 \geq 0$  and  $Q = 4Z^2 - 8 - \beta \geq 0$ .

Suppose that  $\sigma = 4$ . Then  $\nu_1 \leq 2$  and  $2Z - D = D + 2K_S = C + 2K_0 \sim (f - 4 + 2B)F_c$  and hence, Q = 0.

Next, under the hypothesis  $Q = (2Z - D)^2 = 4K_S^2 + 3\beta - 8 = 0$ , we shall derive  $\sigma = 4$ , examining the following cases, separately.

• case  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ . Then

$$(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = (D + 3K_S) \cdot (D + 2K_S) > 0.$$

On the other hand, 2(2Z - D) = Z + (3Z - 2D) and so

$$0 = 2Q = 2(2Z - D)^2 = 2(2Z - D) \cdot (2Z - D) = Z \cdot (2Z - D) + (3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) \ge 0.$$

Hence,  $Z \cdot (2Z - D) = (3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 0$ . Thus  $D \cdot (2Z - D) = 0$ , which implies that  $\beta = -D^2 = -2D \cdot Z = 4$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ . Then

$$0 = Q = \tau_4$$
,  $\tau_4 = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma B + 2f - 8)$ ,

$$0 = (\sigma - 4)(\sigma B + 2f - 8).$$

This implies that  $\sigma - 4 = 0$ .

Later, pairs (S, D) with Q = 1, 2 will be enumerated.

**Proposition 12** If D is a rational curve with  $\kappa[D] = 2$ , then  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2$ .

Proof: Since  $K_{\beta}$  is nef and big and  $\lceil K_{\beta} \rceil = D + K_S$ , it follows that  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(D + 2K_S)) = 0$  by a theorem of Kawamata. Hence, by Riemann-Roch,

$$\dim H^{0}(S, \mathcal{O}_{S}(D+2K_{S})) = \frac{(D+K_{S}) \cdot (D+2K_{S})}{2} + 1$$
$$= \frac{Z \cdot (2Z-D)}{2} + 1 = Z^{2} + 2.$$

By  $2(D + K_S) \cdot D < 0$ , we get |2Z| = |2Z - D| + D; hence,

$$P_2[D] = \dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(D + 2K_S)) = Z^2 + 2.$$

This implies that  $Z^2 \geq 0$ , for  $P_2[D] \geq 2$ .

In later sections, pairs with  $P_2[D] = 2,3$  will be enumerated.

## 15 logarithmic plurigenera

However, logarithmic m genera are a little hard to compute.

**Lemma 15** If F is an effective divisor such that  $F \cdot D < 0$  where D is an irreducible curve with  $\beta = -D^2 > 0$ , then letting  $a_1 = \lceil \frac{F \cdot D}{\beta} \rceil$ ,  $a_1 D$  becomes a fixed component of |F|.

Further,  $\dim |F| = \dim |F - a_1 D|$ .

Proof: There exist an effective divisor  $F_1$  which does not contain D and a positive integer a such that  $F = F_1 + aD$ . Since  $F_1 \cdot D \geq 0$ ,  $F \cdot D = F_1 \cdot D + aD^2 = F_1 \cdot D - a\beta \geq -a\beta$ . Hence,  $a \geq \frac{-F \cdot D}{\beta}$ . Therefore, we obtain  $a \geq a_1 = \lceil \frac{-F \cdot D}{\beta} \rceil$ .

For  $m \geq 2$ , let  $Y = (m-1)K_{\beta} = (m-1)K_S + (m-1)(1-\frac{2}{\beta})D$ , which is nef and big. Then  $\lceil Y \rceil = (m-1)K_S + \lceil (m-1)(1-\frac{2}{\beta}) \rceil D$  and by a theorem of Kawamata,  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + \lceil Y \rceil)) = 0$ .

Applying Lemma 15 to F = mZ, we obtain  $F \cdot D = -2m$ ,  $a_1 = \lceil \frac{2m}{\beta} \rceil$  and  $K_S + \lceil Y \rceil = mK_S + \lceil (m-1)(1-\frac{2}{\beta}) \rceil D$ .

### Claim 5

$$mZ - \lceil \frac{2m}{\beta} \rceil D \le mK_S + \lceil (m-1)(1-\frac{2}{\beta}) \rceil D \le mZ.$$

Proof: It suffices to verify the inequalities:

$$m - \lceil \frac{2m}{\beta} \rceil \le \lceil (m-1)(1 - \frac{2}{\beta}) \rceil \le m.$$

Let 
$$q = \lceil \frac{2m-2}{\beta} \rceil$$
 and  $2m-2 = q\beta + r_0$ . Then  $\lceil (m-1)(1-\frac{2}{\beta}) \rceil = m-q-1$  and  $\lceil \frac{2m}{\beta} \rceil = \lceil \frac{2+q\beta+r_0}{\beta} \rceil = q+1$  or  $q+2$ . Hence,  $m-\lceil \frac{2m}{\beta} \rceil = m-q-2$  or  $m-q-1$ .

Therefore,

$$\dim |mZ| = \dim |mZ - aD| = \dim |K_S + \lceil Y \rceil|.$$

Letting  $V = \lceil Y \rceil$ , we get V = (m-1)Z - qD and  $K_S + V = mZ - (q+1)D$ . By a vanishing theorem of Kawamata,  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + V)) = 0$  and so by Riemann-Roch,

$$\dim |mZ| = \dim |K_S + V| = \frac{V \cdot (K_S + V)}{2}$$

$$= \frac{((m-1)Z - qD) \cdot (mZ - (q+1)D)}{2}$$

$$= \frac{m(m-1)Z^2 + q(q+1)D^2 - (qm + (m-1)(q+1))Z \cdot D}{2}$$

$$= \frac{m(m-1)Z^2 + (q+1)(-q\beta) + 2(qm + (m-1)(q+1))}{2}$$

$$= \frac{m(m-1)Z^2}{2} + mq + \frac{r_0(q+1)}{2}.$$

Thus we establish the following result.

**Proposition 13** If D is a rational curve with  $\beta = -D^2$  and  $\kappa[D] = 2$  then, letting  $q = \left[\frac{2m-2}{\beta}\right]$  and  $2m-2 = q\beta + r_0$ , we obtain

$$P_m[D] = \frac{m(m-1)Z^2}{2} + mq + \frac{r_0(q+1)}{2} + 1.$$

In particular,

$$P_3[D] = 3Z^2 + 3.$$

When m = 4, we get  $2m - 2 = 6 = q\beta + r_0$ . If  $\beta > 6$  then  $q = 0, r_0 = 6$ . Hence,

$$P_4[D] = 6Z^2 + 4.$$

If  $\beta = 6$  then  $q = 1, r_0 = 0$ . Hence,

$$P_4[D] = 6Z^2 + 5.$$

If  $\beta = 5$  then  $q = 1, r_0 = 1$  and in this case  $Z^2 = 0$ . Hence,

$$P_4[D] = 6Z^2 + 6 = 6.$$

## **15.1** invariant $P_{3,1}[D]$

By Lemma 13, if  $\sigma > 4$  then 2Z - D is nef and big. Hence,  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + 2Z - D)) = 0$ . Noting that  $K_S + 2Z - D = 3Z - 2D \sim D + 3K_S$ , by Riemann-Roch, we get

$$\dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(3K_S+D)) = \frac{(3Z-2D)\cdot (2Z-D)}{2} + 1 = 3Z^2 + 8 + D^2.$$

If  $\sigma < 6$  then  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot F_c = (\sigma - 6)\Delta_0 \cdot F_c = (\sigma - 6) < 0$ . Hence,  $|3Z - 2D| = \emptyset$ , i.e,  $P_{3,1}[D] = 0$ . Thus, we obtain the next result.

**Proposition 14** If D is rational,  $\kappa[D] = 2$  and  $\sigma > 4$ , then

$$P_{3,1}[D] = 3Z^2 + 8 + D^2$$
.

Moreover, if  $\sigma = 5$  then  $P_{3,1}[D] = 0$ .

Note that  $P_{3,2}[D] = P_3[D] = 3Z^2 + 3$  and that if  $\sigma \ge 6$  then  $3Z^2 + 8 \ge \beta$ . Next, let Y be  $\frac{3}{2}(2Z - D)$ , that is nef and big. Hence,  $H^1(S, \mathcal{O}_S(K_S + \lceil Y \rceil)) = 0$ . However,  $\lceil Y \rceil = 3Z - D$  and  $K_S + \lceil Y \rceil = 4Z - 2D$ . Hence,

$$\dim H^0(S, \mathcal{O}_S(4Z - 2D)) = \frac{(4Z - 2D) \cdot (3Z - D)}{2} + 1 = 6Z^2 + 11 + D^2.$$

Thus, we obtain the next result.

**Proposition 15** If D is rational,  $\kappa[D] = 2$  and  $\sigma > 4$ , then

$$P_{4,2}[D] = 6Z^2 + 11 + D^2$$
.

# **16** curves with $P_2[D] = 2$

We shall give a complete list of types of pairs (S,D) such that  $P_2[D] = 2$ ,  $\kappa[D] = 2$ , g(D) = 0. Hence, suppose that  $\kappa[D] = 2$ , g(D) = 0,  $P_2[D] = 2$ . Then by Lemma 12,  $Z^2 = 0$ ; i.e.  $K_S^2 - D^2 = 4$  and so  $\beta = r - 4 \ge 5$ . Note that

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = (\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot (2Z - D) = (6 - \beta)\nu_1 + \beta - 4.$$

Moreover, from  $Q \geq 0$ , it follows that

$$Q = 4Z^2 - 4Z \cdot D + D^2 = 8 - \beta.$$

Hence, we have four cases according to the value of  $\beta$ , i.e.  $\beta = 5, 6, 7, 8$ . However, first we shall consider the case when  $\nu_1 = 2$ .

**Proposition 16** If  $Z^2 = 0$  and  $\nu_1 = 2$ , then  $\beta = 12$ .

Proof: From  $2Z^2-2(g-1)=2Z^2-Z\cdot D=2Z_0{}^2-Z_0\cdot C=\tau_3-2$  , it follows that

$$(\sigma - 3)(\sigma B + 2f - 6) = \tau_3 = 2 + 2Z^2 - 2(g - 1) = 4.$$

Hence,  $\sigma - 3 = 1, 2$ .

If  $\sigma = 4$ , then  $\sigma B + 2f - 4 = 2 + 4 = 6$ , thus (B, f) = (0, 5), (1, 3), (2, 1). In each case,  $g_0 = 12, r = 12, K_S^2 = -4, \beta = 12$ . The type is  $[4 * 5; 2^{12}]$  or its associates.

If  $\sigma = 5$ , then 5B + 2f - 4 = 2 + 2 = 4, thus (B, f) = (0, 4). But this is impossible, for  $\sigma \le f$ .

Second, under the hypothesis  $\nu_1 \geq 3$  we shall examine the following four cases,  $\beta = 5, 6, 7, 8$ , separately.

### **16.1** case $\beta = 5$

Then r=9 and  $K_S^2=-1$  and moreover  $\rho_{\nu_1}=\nu_1+1$ ; hence, by Formula II' (Lemma 11),  $\nu_1+1=\zeta_{\nu_1}+\theta_{\nu_1}$ .

**Claim 6**  $p = \sigma - 2\nu_1 = 0$ .

Proof: Otherwise, from  $\theta_{\nu_1} \geq \tilde{A} + \gamma \geq 3\nu_1 - 5$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 + 1 \geq 3\nu_1 - 5$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 \leq 3$ ; i.e.  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Thus  $B = 1, \sigma = 2\nu_1 + 1 = 7, f = \nu_1 = 3$ ; hence,  $g_0 = 6 \cdot 9 - 21 = 33$ . Therefore, by genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 33$ .

Thus  $2t_3 = 33 - 9 = 24 > 18$ ; a contradiction. Therefore p = 0 has been established and

$$\nu_1 + 1 = \zeta_{\nu_1} + 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1).$$

Letting  $q = f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1$ , we get  $\nu_1 + 1 \ge 2q(\nu_1 - 2)$  and thus

$$3 \le \nu_1 \le \frac{4q+1}{2q-1} = 2 + \frac{3}{2q-1}.$$

Hence, if q > 0 then q = 1, 2. Note that  $\gamma = 2q(\nu_1 - 2)$ 

#### **16.1.1** case $\gamma > 0$

If q = 1, then  $\nu_1 \leq 5$ . If q = 2, then  $\nu_1 \leq 3$ .

•  $\nu_1 = 5$ . Then  $\sigma = 10, q = 1$ .

From  $1 = f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1$ , it follows that  $g_0 = 90$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = \zeta_5 = 0$ . Hence,  $t_3 = t_4 = 0$ . From  $t_2 + t_5 = r = 9$  and  $t_2 + 10t_5 = g_0 = 90$ , it follows that  $t_2 = 0, t_5 = 9$ . The type is  $[10 * 11; 5^9]$  or its associates.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$ . Then  $\sigma = 8$  and q = 1.

From  $1 = f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1$ , it follows that  $g_0 = 56$  and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = \zeta_4 = 1$ . Thus  $t_3 = 1$ . From  $t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = r = 9$ ,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = g_0 = 56$ , it follows that  $t_4 = 9$  and  $t_2 = -1$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Then  $\sigma = 6$ ,  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = \zeta_3 = 0$ ,  $4 = \zeta_{\nu_1} + 2q$ . Hence, q = 2. From  $2 = f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1$ , it follows that  $\sigma = 6$  and  $g_0 = 35$ . From  $t_2 + t_3 = r = 9$ ,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = g_0 = 35$ , it follows that  $2t_3 = 26$ ,  $t_2 < 0$ ; a contradiction.

#### **16.1.2** case $\gamma = 0$

Finally, we consider the case in which q=0, i.e.  $\gamma=0$ . Then  $\theta_{\nu_1}=0$  and from  $\theta_{\nu_1}=(\nu_1-2)(\tilde{B}-2\sigma)$  it follows that  $\tilde{B}-2\sigma=0$ ; hence,  $2g_0=\tau_1=(\sigma-1)(\tilde{B}-2)=2(\sigma-1)^2$ .

Moreover,  $\nu_1 + 1 = \zeta_{\nu_1}$ ; hence,

$$\nu_1 + 1 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + 3(\nu_1 - 5)x_3 + \cdots$$

Since  $\nu_1 + 1 = F(\nu_1) \ge 2(\nu_1 - 4)$  it follows that  $\nu_1 \le 9$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 9$  In this case,  $\sigma = 18, g_0 = 17^2 = 289$  and

$$\nu_1 + 1 = 10 = F(9) = 6x_1 + 10x_2 + \cdots$$

Then  $x_2 = 1, x_1 = x_3 = \cdots = 0$  and since  $t_4 + t_7 = x_2 = 1$ , it follows that

$$t_2 + t_4 + t_7 + t_9 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 + 21t_7 + 36t_9 = 289$ .

Therefore,

$$5t_4 + 20t_7 + 35t_9 = 280$$
,  $t_4 + 4t_7 + 7t_9 = 56$ ,  $7t_9 = 55 - 3t_7 = 55$  or 52.

This is a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 8$ 

In this case  $\sigma = 16, g_0 = 15^2 = 225$  and

$$\nu_1 + 1 = 9 = F(8) = 5x_1 + 8x_2 + 9x_3$$
.

Hence,  $t_5 = x_3 = 1$ ,  $t_3 = t_4 = t_7 = t_6 = 0$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_5 + t_8 = 9, t_2 + 10t_5 + 28t_8 = 225.$$

From these, we get  $t_5 + 3t_8 = 23$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 7$ 

In this case,  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13^2 = 169$  and

$$\nu_1 + 1 = 8 = F(7) = 4x_1 + 6x_2$$
.

Hence,  $t_3 + t_6 = x_1 = 2, t_4 = t_5 = 0$  and so

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_6 + t_7 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 15t_6 + 21t_7 = 169$ .

From these, it follows that  $2t_3 + 14t_6 + 20t_7 = 160$ ;  $t_3 + 7t_6 + 10t_7 = 80$ . Thus  $6t_6 + 10t_7 = 80 - 2 = 78$ ;  $3t_6 + 5t_7 = 39$ , a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 6$ 

In this case  $\sigma = 12, q_0 = 11^2 = 121$  and

$$\nu_1 + 1 = 7 = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2.$$

Hence,  $t_3 + t_5 = x_1 = 1, t_4 = x_2 = 1$  and

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 + t_6 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + t_6 = 7$ ,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 + 15t_6 = 121$ .

From these, it follows that

$$7+3+6+7t_5+14t_6=121$$
,  $7t_5+14t_6=121-16=105$ ,  $t_5+2t_6=15$ .

Hence,  $t_2 = t_3 = 0, t_4 = t_5 = 1, t_6 = 7$ . Thus the type is  $[12 * 12; 6^7, 5, 4]$  or its associates.

• case  $\nu_1 = 5$ 

In this case  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9^2 = 81$  and

$$\nu_1 + 1 = 6 = F(5) = 2x_1$$
.

Hence,  $t_3 + t_4 = x_1 = 3$ . Thus

$$t_3 + t_4 + t_2 + t_5 = 9,3t_3 + 6t_4 + t_2 + 10t_5 = 81,$$

$$9 + 3t_4 + 6 + 9t_5 = 81, 3t_4 + 9t_5 = 81 - 15 = 66, t_4 + 3t_5 = 22.$$

Since  $t_4 \leq 3$  and  $t_5 \leq 6$ , it follows that  $t_4 + 3t_5 \leq 21$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$ 

In this case  $\sigma = 8$ ,  $g_0 = 7^2 = 49$  and

$$\nu_1 + 1 = 5 = F(4) = x_1$$
.

Hence,  $t_3 = x_1 = 5$ ,  $t_2 + t_4 = 4$ . Thus

 $3t_3+6t_4+t_2=49, 15+4+5t_4=49; 5t_4=30, t_4=6>4;$  a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 3$ 

In this case  $\sigma = 6$ ,  $g_0 = 5^2 = 25$  and  $t_2 + t_3 = 9$ ,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 25$ ,  $2t_3 = 16$ . Thus

$$t_2 = 1, \quad t_3 = 8.$$

Then  $D^2 = 72 - 4 - 8 \cdot 9 = -4$ , a contradiction.

#### **16.2** case $\beta = 6$

Then  $r = 10, K_S^2 = -2$  and so  $\rho_{\nu_1} = 6\nu_1 - 4 - 6(\nu_1 - 1) = 2$ . By Lemma 11

$$2 = \zeta_{\nu_1} + \theta_{\nu_1}$$
.

By  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ , we get  $3\nu_1 - 5 \geq 4$ . Hence, if p > 0 then by Corollary,  $2 = \rho_{\nu_1} \geq \tilde{A} + \gamma \geq 3\nu_1 - 5 \geq 4$ , contradiction. Therefore, if  $\theta_{\nu_1} > 0$ , then  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$  and  $2 = \theta_{\nu_1} = \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1)$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 = 3$  and  $f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1 = 1$ . Thus B = 0, f = 7,  $\sigma = 6$ ,  $g_0 = 30$ . From

$$t_2 + t_3 = 10, t_2 + 3t_3 = 30,$$

it follows that  $t_2 = 0, t_3 = 10$ . The type is  $[6*7;3^{10}]$  or its associates. If  $\theta_{\nu_1} = 0$ , then  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$  and  $f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1 = 0$ . Hence,  $2 = \zeta_{\nu_1}$ .

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = 2 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + \cdots$$

Then from  $2 = F(\nu_1) \ge \nu_1 - 3$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 \le 5$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 5, x_1 = 1$ . Then  $\sigma = f = 10, g_0 = 81, t_3 + t_4 = x_1 = 1$  and so

$$t_2 + t_5 + t_3 + t_4 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 10t_5 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 81$ .

Hence,

$$9 + 9t_5 + 3 + 3t_4 = 81, 9t_5 + 3t_4 = 81 - 12 = 69, 3t_5 + t_4 = 23.$$

Since  $t_4 = 0, 1$ , there exist no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4, x_1 = 2$ . Then  $\sigma = 8, t_3 = 2$ . Hence,  $g_0 = 49$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49$ .

Hence,

$$35t_4 = 35, \quad t_4 = 7, \quad t_2 = 1.$$

The type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3^2, 2]$  or its associates.

#### **16.3** case $\beta = 7$

Then  $r = 11, K_S^2 = -3$  and so  $\rho_{\nu_1} = 3 - \nu_1$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 = 3$ . Then  $\sigma = 6, \rho_{\nu_1} = 0$  and so  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = \theta_{\nu_1} = 0$ . Then  $3B + f = 6, g_0 = 25$  and

$$t_2 + t_3 = 11$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = g_0 = 25$ .

There exists a solution to the effect that  $t_2 = 4, t_3 = 7$  and so the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2^4]$  or its associates.

## **16.4** case $\beta = 8$

Then  $r = 12, K_S^2 = -4$  and so  $\nu_1 = 2$ . In this case, the type is  $[4 * 5; 2^{12}]$  or its associates.

**Theorem 10** Suppose that g = 0 and  $P_2[D] = 2$ . Then  $Z^2 = 0$  and

- 1. if  $D^2 = -5$  then the type is either  $[12 * 12; 6^7, 5, 4]$  or  $[10 * 11; 5^9]$  or their associates.
- 2. If  $D^2 = -6$  then the type is  $[6*7;3^{10}]$  or  $[8*8;4^7,3^2,2]$  or their associates.
- 3. If  $D^2 = -7$  then the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2^4]$  or its associates.
- 4. If  $D^2 = -8$  then the type is  $[4*5;2^{12}]$  or its associates.

## 16.5 curves parametrized by polynomials

**Remark 3** Rational curves C defined by parametrized  $x = f(t) = t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n, y = g(t) = t^m + b_1t^{m-1} + \cdots + b_m, (n > m \ge 4, n \ge 6)$ , where the  $a_j$  and the  $b_k$  are general, have  $\sigma = m$  and Kodaira dimension 2, except for (n,m) = (6,5), (7,4), (6,4), (8,4).

The invariant  $D^2$  is given by the following formula:

(1) 
$$n = m - 1 \ge 6$$
. Then

$$D^2 = -n^2 + 6n - 4$$
,  $Z^2 = \frac{n^2 - 9n + 16}{2}$ .

(2) 
$$n = mq_0 + r_0, 0 \le r_0 < m, 2r_0 \le m$$
 Then

$$D^{2} = -(n-2)(m-2) + 2\delta(n,m) + q^{*}(n,m),$$
  

$$Z^{2} = R(m,r_{0}) + 2(n-2)(m-2) - 2\delta(n,m).$$

(3) 
$$n = mq_0 + r_0, 0 \le r_0 < m, m = r_0 + r_1, r_1 < r_0$$
. Then

$$D^{2} = -(n-2)(m-2) + 2\delta(n,m) + q^{*}(m,r_{1}).$$

2

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>2</sup>Note that the similar result was obtained by S.Usuda, independently.

## 17 rational curves with Q = 1, 2

While  $\sigma \geq 4$ ,  $Q = (2Z - D)^2 \geq 0$  has been established and so we shall investigate the type of pairs with small Q. By Proposition 11, if Q = 0 then  $\sigma = 4$  and vice versa. By definition,  $4Z^2 + 8 + D^2 = Q$ . Hence,  $Q - 8 + \beta = 4Z^2 \geq 0$ ; thus  $\beta \geq 8 - Q$ .

• When  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ , we get  $(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) \geq 0$ . Hence,

$$(3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 3(Q + \beta - 8) + 28 - 4\beta \ge 0,$$

and so

$$3Q - \beta + 4 > 0$$
.

Hence,  $3Q + 4 \ge \beta$ .

Suppose that Q = 1. Then  $\beta = 7$  and  $Z^2 = 0$ . By Theorem 10, the type turns out to be  $[6*6;3^7,2^4]$ .

• When  $\nu_1 < 2$ , we obtain

$$1 = Q = (2Z - D)^2 = (\sigma - 4)(B\sigma + 2f - 8).$$

From this, it follows that  $\sigma=5, f=7, g_0=14$  and the type is  $[5*7,1;2^{14}]$ , where  $D^2=-11, r=14, K^2=-6, Z^2=-6+11-4=1$ .

Suppose that Q=2. If  $\nu_1 \geq 3$ , then  $3 \cdot 2 - \beta + 4 \geq 0$ , and so  $10 - \beta \geq 0$ . But from  $4Z^2 + 8 - \beta = 2$ , it follows that  $\beta = 4Z^2 + 6 = 6$  or 10. So if  $\beta = 6$ , then  $Z^2 = 0$ . By Theorem 10, the type becomes  $[6*7;3^{10}]$  or  $[8*8;4^7,3^2,2]$  or their associates.

If  $\beta=10$ , then  $Z^2=1=K^2-D^2-4=K^2+10-4$ ,  $K^2=-5$  and r=13. Moreover,  $\xi_0=12-13=-1$ ,  $\alpha=-4+10=6$ ,  $\xi_2=\sigma+f+\frac{B\sigma}{2}-(\xi_2-1)p$ . It is not difficult to see that p=0 and  $\eta=0$ . Thus

$$\zeta = -2\nu_1 + 6 = F(\nu_1) > \nu_1 - 3.$$

Therefore,  $\nu_1=3$  and so  $\sigma=6, g_0=25, t_2+t_3=13, t_2+3t_3=25$ . From this  $t_2=7, t_3=6$ . The type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^7]$  or its associates , where  $r=13, D^2=72-54-28=-10, Z^2=8-13+10-4=1$ .

When  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ , we obtain  $2 = Q = (\sigma - 4)(B\sigma + 2f - 8)$ . Hence, it follows that  $\sigma = 5$ , f = 5,  $g_0 = 16$  and the type is  $[5*5;2^{16}]$  or  $[5*10,2;2^{16}]$ , where r = 16,  $D^2 = 50 - 64 = -14$ ,  $Z^2 = 8 - 16 + 14 - 4 = 2$ .

Combining Proposition 10 with the above argument, we establish the following result.

### **Theorem 11** Assume that Q = 1. Then

- 1. the type is  $[6*6;3^7,2^{\varepsilon}]$ , where  $\varepsilon \leq 4$  or
- 2. the type is  $[5*7,1;2^r]$  or
- 3. the type is [7;1] or their associates, or
- 4. the type is [5; 1] or
- 5. the type is [3\*5,1;1].

Assume that Q = 2. Then

- 1. the type is  $[8*8;4^7,3^2,2^{\varepsilon'}]$ , where  $\varepsilon' \leq 1$  or their associates or
- 2. the type is  $[6*7;3^{10}]$  or their associates, or
- 3. the type is  $[6*6;2^{\varepsilon},3^{6}]$  where  $g=7-\varepsilon$  and  $D^{2}=4g-10$  or their associates, or
- 4. the type is  $[5*5;2^r]$ ,
- 5. the type is  $[5*10,2;2^r]$  where g = 16 r and  $D^2 = 50 4r = 4g 14$  or
- 6. the type is  $[5*5;2^r]$  or  $[5*10,2;2^r]$  or their associates or
- 7. the type is [3\*3;1].

Suppose that  $Z^2 = 1$  and g(D) = 0. Then  $Q = 4Z^2 + 8 + D^2 = 12 - \beta$ . Hence, the next result follows immediately.

Corollary 6 Suppose that  $Z^2 = 1$  and g(D) = 0.

If  $\beta = -D^2 = 11$  then Q = 1 and thus the type is  $[5*7, 1; 2^{14}]$ .

If  $\beta = 10$  then Q = 2 and thus the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^7]$  or their associates.

# 18 inequalities between $Z^2$ and $D^2$

For rational curves D, the following inequalities hold between  $\mathbb{Z}^2$  and  $\mathbb{D}^2$ .

**Proposition 17** Suppose that g = 0 and  $\kappa[D] = 2$ . If  $\nu_1 \leq 2$  and  $\kappa[D] = 2$  then

$$Z^{2} = \frac{-(\sigma - 3)}{2(\sigma - 2)}D^{2} + \frac{-\sigma^{2} + 5\sigma - 8}{\sigma - 2},$$
$$P_{2}[D] = Z^{2} + 2 = \frac{-(\sigma - 3)}{2(\sigma - 2)}D^{2} + \frac{-\sigma^{2} + 7\sigma - 12}{\sigma - 2}.$$

In particular, if 
$$\sigma = 4$$
 then  $Z^2 = \frac{-D^2}{4} - 2$ ,  $P_2[D] = Z^2 + 2 = \frac{-D^2}{4}$ .  
If  $\sigma = 5$  then  $Z^2 = \frac{-D^2 - 8}{3}$ ,  $P_2[D] = \frac{-D^2 - 2}{3}$ .

Now we introduce the following regions

$$U_I = \{(x, y) \mid 4y > x - 8, 3y < x - 8\}$$

that is called vacant region I.

Define  $R(\beta, Z^2) = \{(\beta, Z^2) \mid \text{ for pairs } (S, D) \text{ with rational } D\}$ . Then from the previous result, we obtain

$$R(\beta, Z^2) \cap U_I = \emptyset.$$

## 18.1 curves parametrized by polynomials

**Remark 4** Rational curves C defined by parametrized  $x = f(t) = t^n + a_1t^{n-1} + \cdots + a_n, y = g(t) = t^m + b_1t^{m-1} + \cdots + b_m, (n > m \ge 4, n \ge 6)$ , where the  $a_j$  and the  $b_k$  are general, have  $\sigma = m$  and Kodaira dimension 2, except for (n, m) = (6, 5), (7, 4), (6, 4), (8, 4).

The invariant  $D^2$  is given by the following formula:

(1) n = m - 1 > 6. Then

$$D^2 = -n^2 + 6n - 4$$
,  $Z^2 = \frac{n^2 - 9n + 16}{2}$ .

(2)  $n = mq_0 + r_0, 0 \le r_0 < m, 2r_0 \le m$  Then

$$D^{2} = -(n-2)(m-2) + 2\delta(n,m) + q^{*}(n,m),$$
  

$$Z^{2} = R(m,r_{0}) + 2(n-2)(m-2) - 2\delta(n,m).$$

(3) 
$$n = mq_0 + r_0, 0 < r_0 < m, m = r_0 + r_1, r_1 < r_0$$
. Then

$$D^{2} = -(n-2)(m-2) + 2\delta(n,m) + q^{*}(m,r_{1}).$$

3

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>3</sup>Note that the similar result was obtained by S.Usuda, independently.

$-D^2$	$Z^2$	n	m	$-D^2$	$Z^2$	n	m
4	-1	6	4	20	4	8	6
4	-1	7	4	20	4	8	7
4	-1	8	4	20	4	11	5
4	-1	6	5	22	5	9	6
8	0	9	4	24	4	17	4
11	1	7	5	26	6	12	5
11	1	7	6	28	5	18	4
12	1	10	4	28	5	19	4
12	1	11	4	28	5	20	4
12	1	12	4	28	7	10	6
14	2	8	5	28	7	11	6
14	2	9	5	28	7	12	6
14	2	10	5	29	7	13	5
16	2	13	4	29	7	14	5
20	3	14	4	29	7	15	5
20	3	15	4	31	8	9	7
20	3	16	4	31	8	9	8

Table 1: data of polynomial curves

## 18.2 curves parametrized by torus polynomials (\*)

Here elements of  $k[t, \frac{1}{t}]$  are said to be torus polynomials.

Let us consider rational curves C parametrized by torus polynomials

$$x = f(t) = t^{n} + a_{n-1}t^{n-1} + \dots + a_0 + a_{-1}\frac{1}{t} + \dots + a_{-n}\frac{1}{t^{n}},$$
$$y = g(t) = t^{m} + b_{-1}t^{m-1} + \dots + b_0 + b_{-1}\frac{1}{t} + \dots + b_{-m}\frac{1}{t^{m}},$$

where the  $a_j$  and the  $b_k$  are general. Under the assumption  $n > m \ge 2$  have  $\sigma = 2m$  and Kodaira dimension 2, except for (n, m) = (6, 5), (7, 4), (6, 4), (8, 4).

# **19** curves with $P_2[D] = 3$

Next, the complete list of types of pairs (S, D) such that  $P_2[D] = 3$  will be given. (The same result was obtained by S.Usuda independently at the same time.)

If  $\kappa[D] = 2$ , g(D) = 0,  $P_2[D] = 3$ , i.e.,  $Z^2 = 1$ , then  $K_S^2 - D^2 = 5$  and so  $\beta = r - 3$ . But since  $8 - r = K_S^2 \le -1$ , we get  $\beta = r - 3 \ge 9 - 3 = 6$ . Furthermore, by definition

$$\rho_{\nu_1} = (\nu_1 Z - (\nu_1 - 1)D) \cdot (2Z - D) = 8\nu_1 - 4 - (\nu_1 - 1)\beta = (8 - \beta)\nu_1 + (\nu_1 - 1)\beta - 4.$$

First, we treat the case of curves with only double points.

**Proposition 18** If g = 0,  $\nu_1 = 2$ ,  $Z^2 = 1$  then the type is 1)  $[4 * 6; 2^{15}]$  or its associates, where  $D^2 = -12$ , or 2)  $[5 * 7, 1; 2^{14}]$ , where  $D^2 = -11$ .

Proof: From  $6 = (\sigma - 3)(B\sigma + 2f - 6)$ , we have two cases 1)  $\sigma - 3 = 1$  and 2)  $\sigma - 3 = 2$ .

case 1)  $\sigma - 3 = 1$ . Then  $B\sigma + 2f - 6 = 6$  and so 3B + f = 6. The type is  $[4 * 6; 2^{15}]$  or its associates.

case 2)  $\sigma - 3 = 2$ . Then  $B\sigma + 2f - 6 = 3$  and so 5B + 2f = 9. Therefore, B = 1, f = 2 and the type is  $[5 * 7, 1; 2^{14}]$ .

Second, we treat the case of curves with  $\nu_1 = 3$ .

**Proposition 19** If  $g = 0, \nu_1 = 3, Z^2 = 1$  then

$$\tau_5 = (\sigma - 5)(B\sigma + 2f - 10) = 2(14 - r).$$

Proof: Here, we shall prove the following formula:

If 
$$\nu_1 = 3, K^2 = 8 - r$$
 and  $\beta = -D^2$ , then

$$\tau_5 = 10(g+4) + 4\beta - 6r.$$

In order to verify this, first consult genus formula and compute  $D^2$ :

$$t_2 + t_3 = r$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = g_0 - g$ ,  $4t_2 + 9t_3 = C^2 + \beta$ .

Then

$$2t_3 = q_0 - q - r, 5t_3 = C^2 + \beta - 4r,$$

and thus

$$5(g_0 - g - r) = 2(C^2 + \beta - 4r).$$

Since  $2g_0 - 2 = Z_0 \cdot C$ , it follows that

$$5Z_0 \cdot C + 10 - 4C^2 = 10g + 4\beta - 6r,$$

and by Formula I(Lemma 3)

$$\tau_5 = (5Z_0 - 4C) \cdot C + 50 = 10(q+4) + 4\beta - 6r.$$

**Remark 5** Replacing  $\beta$  by  $Z^2 + r - 4g - 4$ , we obtain

$$\tau_5 = 24 + 4Z^2 - 6g - 2r.$$

Claim 7  $g_0 \leq 3r$ , provided that  $\nu_1 = 3$  and g = 0.

Proof: The genus formula implies that

$$t_2 + t_3 = r$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = g_0$ .

Then  $g_0 - r = 2t_3 \le 2r$ . Hence,  $g_0 \le 3r$ .

The next result is easily verified.

Claim 8

$$B\sigma + 2f - 10 \ge \sigma - 5$$
.

Since  $t_3 > 0$ , it follows that  $\sigma \ge 6$  and hence, r < 14. But  $r = \beta + 3 \ge 9$ . Thus we have the following five cases:

(1) r = 13. Then  $\tau_5 = (\sigma - 5)(B\sigma + 2f - 10) = 2$ . Hence,  $\sigma - 5 = 1, B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 2$ . Thus  $\sigma = 6$  and 3B + f = 6, which implies  $g_0 = 25$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 13$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 25$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 = 12$ ;  $t_3 = 6$ ,  $t_2 = 7$ . The type is  $[6 * 6; 3^6, 2^7]$  or its associates.

(2) r = 12. Then  $\tau_5 = (\sigma - 5)(B\sigma + 2f - 10) = 4$ . Hence, a)  $\sigma - 5 = 1, B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 4$ ; or b)  $\sigma - 5 = 2, B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 2$ .

In the case (2.a), we get  $\sigma = 6$  and 3B + f = 7, which implies  $g_0 = 30$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 12$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 30$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 = 18$ ;  $t_3 = 9$ ,  $t_2 = 3$ . The type is  $[6 * 7; 3^9, 2^3]$  or its associates. In the case (2.b), we get  $\sigma = 7$  and 7B + 2f = 12, a contradiction.

(3) r = 11. Then  $\tau_5 = (\sigma - 5)(B\sigma + 2f - 10) = 6$ . Hence, a)  $\sigma - 5 = 1$ ,  $B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 6$ ; or b)  $\sigma - 5 = 2$ ,  $B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 3$ .

In the case (3.a), we get  $\sigma = 6$  and 3B + f = 8

, which implies  $g_0 = 35$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 11$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 35$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 = 24$ ;  $t_3 = 12$ ; a contradiction.

In the case (3.b), we get  $\sigma=7$  and 7B+2f=13 , which implies  $B=1, f=3, g_0=33.$  By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 = 11$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 = 33$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 = 22$ ;  $t_3 = 11$ ,  $t_2 = 0$ . The type is  $[7 * 10, 1; 3^{11}]$ .

(4) r = 10. Then  $g_0 \le 3r = 30$  and moreover,  $\tau_5 = (\sigma - 5)(B\sigma + 2f - 10) = 8$ . Hence, a)  $\sigma - 5 = 1$ ,  $B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 8$ ; or b)  $\sigma - 5 = 2$ ,  $B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 4$ .

In the case (4.a), we get  $\sigma=6$  and 3B+f=9 , which implies  $g_0=40;$  a contradiction.

In the case (4.b), we get  $\sigma=7$  and 7B+2f=14, which implies  $g_0=36$ ; a contradiction.

(5) r = 9. Then  $g_0 \le 3r = 27$  and moreover,  $\tau_5 = (\sigma - 5)(B\sigma + 2f - 10) = 10$ . Hence, a)  $\sigma - 5 = 1$ ,  $B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 10$ ; or b)  $\sigma - 5 = 2$ ,  $B\sigma + 2f - 10 = 5$ .

In the case (5.a), we get  $\sigma=6$  and 3B+f=10, which implies  $g_0=45,$  a contradiction.

In the case (5.b), we get  $\sigma = 7$  and 7B + 2f = 15, which implies B = 1, f = 4. Hence,  $g_0 = 18 + 21 = 39$ ; a contradiction.

Thus the following result has been established.

**Proposition 20** Suppose that  $g=0, \nu_1=3$  and  $Z^2=1$ . Then r=11,12,13 and

- 1. if r = 13 then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^7]$  or its associates.
- 2. If r = 12 then the type is  $[6*7;3^9,2^3]$  or its associates.
- 3. If r = 11 then the type is  $[7 * 10, 1; 3^{11}]$ .

Owing to the previous result, we may suppose that  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ . Letting w be  $(2Z - D)^2 \geq 0$ , we get

$$w = (2Z - D)^2 = 4Z^2 - 4Z \cdot D + D^2 = 12 - \beta.$$

Since in the cases w=0,1,2, all types have been already enumerated in Proposition 10, we may assume  $w \geq 3$ . Thus we have the following four cases to examine, separately:

(1) 
$$\beta = 6$$
, (2)  $\beta = 7$ , (3)  $\beta = 8$ , (4)  $\beta = 9$ .

#### **19.1** case $\beta = 6$

Then  $\rho_{\nu_1} = 2\nu_1 + 2$ ; hence, by Lemma 11,

$$2\nu_1 + 2 = \zeta_{\nu_1} + \theta_{\nu_1}$$
.

First assume that  $\theta_{\nu_1} = 0$ .

Then  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$  and  $f + B\nu_1 - 2\nu_1 = 0$  which implies that  $g_0 = (2\nu_1 - 1)(f - 1) + B\nu_1(2\nu_1 - 1) = (2\nu_1 - 1)^2$ .

$$2\nu_1 + 2 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + 3(\nu_1 - 5)x_3 + \cdots$$

To find the maximal  $\nu_1$ , we suppose that  $2\nu_1 + 2 \ge 3(\nu_1 - 5)$ . Then  $\nu_1 \ge 17$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 17$ . From hypothesis,  $x_3 = 1$  and  $x_j = 0$  if  $j \neq 3$ . Therefore,  $\sigma = 34$  and  $g_0 = 33^2 = 1089$ , and moreover,

$$1 = x_3 = t_5 + t_{14}, t_2 + t_{17} + t_5 + t_{14} = 9, t_2 + 136t_{17} + 10t_5 + 91t_{14} = 9,$$
$$135t_{17} + 9t_5 + 90t_{14} = 1080.$$

Therefore,

$$135t_{17} + 81t_{14} = 1080 - 9 = 1071.$$

There exist no solutions.

While  $\nu_1 \leq 16$ , we get  $2\nu_1 + 2 \geq (\nu_1 - 3) + 2(\nu_1 - 4)$ , which implies  $\nu_1 \geq 13$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 13$ . From

$$28 = F(13) = 10x_1 + 18x_2 + 24x_3 + 28x_4.$$

Then we get two solutions 1)  $x_1 = x_2 = 1, x_j = 0$  and 2)  $x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = 0, x_4 = 1$ . Therefore, since  $\sigma = 26, g_0 = 25^2 = 625$ , it follows that in the case 1)

$$1 = x_1 = t_3 + t_{12} = x_2 = t_4 + t_{11},$$

$$t_2 + t_{13} + t_3 + t_{12} + t_4 + t_{11} = 9, \quad t_2 + 78t_{13} + 3t_3 + 66t_{12} + 6t_4 + 55t_{11} = 625,$$

$$77t_{13} + 2t_3 + 65t_{12} + 5t_4 + 54t_{11} = 616,$$

$$77t_{13} + 2 + 63t_{12} + 5 + 49t_{11} = 616,$$

$$77t_{13} + 63t_{12} + 49t_{11} = 609.$$

$$11t_{13} + 9t_{12} + 7t_{11} = 87.$$

The equations have no solutions.

In the case 2),

$$1 = x_4 = t_6 + t_9$$
,  $t_2 + t_6 + t_9 + t_{13} = 9$ ,  $t_2 + 78t_{13} + 15t_6 + 36t_9 = 625$ .

Hence,

$$77t_{13} + 14t_6 + 35t_9 = 616$$
,  $11t_{13} + 2t_6 + 5t_9 = 88$ .

Thus,

$$11t_{13} + 3t_9 = 86$$
;  $t_9 = -1$ .

The equations have no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 12$ . Then

$$26 = F(12) = 9x_1 + 16x_2 + 21x_3 + 24x_4 + 25x_5 + \cdots$$

The equation has no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 11$ . Then  $\sigma = 22, f = 2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 = 22 - 11B$  and  $g_0 = 21^2 = 441$ . The equation

$$24 = F(11) = 8x_1 + 14x_2 + 18x_3 + 20x_4$$

has a solution  $x_1 = 3$ ,  $x_2 = x_3 = x_4 = 0$ . Hence,  $t_3 + t_{10} = x_1 = 3$  and so

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_{10} + t_{11} = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 45t_{10} + 55t_{11} = 441$ ,

$$2t_3 + 44t_{10} + 54t_{11} = 6 + 42t_{10} + 54t_{11} = 432.$$

Thus,

$$42t_{10} + 54t_{11} = 426,$$

and so

$$7t_{10} + 9t_{11} = 71$$
.

But the equation has no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 10$ . Then  $\sigma = 20, f = 2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 = 20 - 10B$  and  $g_0 = 19^2 = 361$ . The equation

$$22 = F(10) = 7x_1 + 12x_2 + 15x_3 + 16x_4$$

has a solution  $x_1 = 1$ ,  $x_2 = x_4 = 0$ ,  $x_3 = 1$ . Hence,  $t_3 + t_9 = t_5 + t_7 = 1$  and so

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_9 = t_5 + t_7 + t_{10} = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 36t_9 + 10t_5 + 21t_7 + 45t_{10} = 361$ ,

$$2t_3 + 35t_9 + 9t_5 + 20t_7 + 44t_{10} = 352$$
.

Thus,

$$2 + 33t_9 + 9 + 11t_7 + 44t_{10} = 352,$$

and so

$$33t_9 + 11t_7 + 44t_{10} = 341.$$

Hence,

$$3t_9 + t_7 + 4t_{10} = 31.$$

The equation has a solution  $t_9 = 1, t_7 = 0, t_{10} = 7, t_5 = 1$ . The type is  $[20 * 20; 10^7, 9, 5]$  or its associates.

• case  $\nu_1 = 9$ . Then  $\sigma = 18$ ,  $f = 2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 = 18 - 9B$  and  $g_0 = 17^2 = 289$ . The equation

$$20 = F(9) = 6x_1 + 10x_2 + 12x_3$$

has a solution  $x_2 = 2, x_1 = x_3 = 0$  and hence,

$$t_4 + t_7 = 2$$
,  $t_2 + t_9 + t_4 + t_7 = 9$ ,  $t_2 + 36t_9 + 6t_4 + 21t_7 = 289$ ,

$$35t_9 + 5t_4 + 20t_7 = 280, \quad 35t_9 + 15t_7 = 270.$$

Hence,  $7t_9 + 3t_7 = 54$ , and then  $t_9 = 6$ ,  $t_7 = 4$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 8$ . Then  $\sigma = 16$ ,  $f = 2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 = 16 - 8B$  and  $g_0 = 15^2 = 225$ . The equation

$$18 = F(8) = 5x_1 + 8x_2 + 9x_3$$

has two solutions 1)  $x_3 = 2$ , and 2)  $x_1 = 2$ ,  $x_2 = 1$ .

In case 1),  $t_5 = x_3 = 2$  and

$$t_2 + t_8 + t_5 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 28t_8 + 10t_5 = 225$ .

Hence,

$$27t_8 + 9t_5 = 216; \quad 3t_8 + t_5 = 24.$$

Then  $3t_8 = 24 - 2 = 22$ , a contradiction.

In case 2),  $t_3 + t_7 = 2$ ,  $t_4 + t_6 = 1$  and so

$$t_2 + t_8 + t_3 + t_7 + t_4 + t_6 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 28t_8 + 3t_3 + 21t_7 + 6t_4 + 15t_6 = 225$ .

Hence,

$$27t_8 + 2t_3 + 20t_7 + 5t_4 + 14t_6 = 216$$
  $27t_8 + 4 + 18t_7 + 5 + 9t_6 = 216$ .

Then  $27t_8 + 18t_7 + 9t_6 = 207$ ; hence,  $3t_8 + 2t_7 + t_6 = 23$ . There exists one solution  $t_8 = 6, t_7 = 2, t_6 = 1$ . The type is  $[16 * 16; 8^6, 7^2, 6]$  or its associates.

• case  $\nu_1 = 7$ . Then  $\sigma = 14$ ,  $f = 2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 = 14 - 7B$  and  $g_0 = 13^2 = 169$ . The equation

$$16 = F(7) = 4x_1 + 6x_2$$

has two solutions : 1)  $x_1 = 4$  and 2)  $x_1 = 1, x_2 = 2$ .

In case 1),  $t_3 + t_6 = x_1 = 4$  and

$$t_2 + t_7 + t_3 + t_6 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 21t_7 + 3t_3 + 15t_6 = 169$ .

Hence,  $20t_7 + 2t_3 + 14t_6 = 160$ .

$$20t_7 + 12t_6 = 152;$$
  $5t_7 + 3t_6 = 38.$ 

Then  $t_7 = 7, t_6 = 1, t_3 = 3$ ; a contradiction.

In case 2), 
$$t_3 + t_6 = x_1 = 1$$
,  $t_4 + t_5 = x_2 = 2$  and

$$t_2 + t_7 + t_3 + t_6 + t_4 + t_5 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 21t_7 + 3t_3 + 15t_6 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 169$ .

Hence,  $20t_7 + 2t_3 + 14t_6 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 160$ ,  $20t_7 + 2 + 12t_6 + 10 + 4t_5 = 160$  and so  $20t_7 + 12t_6 + 4t_5 = 148$ ; thus  $5t_7 + 3t_6 + t_5 = 37$ . There exists no solution.

• case  $\nu_1 = 6$ . Then  $\sigma = 12$ ,  $f = 2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 = 12 - 6B$  and  $g_0 = 11^2 = 121$ . The equation

$$14 = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$$

has one solution  $x_1 = x_2 = 2$  and hence  $t_3 + t_5 = x_1 = 2, t_4 = x_2 = 2$  and so

$$t_2 + t_6 + t_3 + t_5 + t_4 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 15t_6 + 3t_3 + 10t_5 + 6t_4 = 121$ .

Hence,

$$14t_6 + 2t_3 + 9t_5 + 5t_4 = 112$$
,  $14t_6 + 4 + 7t_5 + 10 = 112$ .

Therefore,  $2t_6 + t_5 = 14$ ; hence,  $t_6 = 7$ ,  $t_5 = 0$ ,  $t_3 + t_5 = 2$ ,  $t_4 = 2$ ,  $t_3 = 2$ ,  $t_7 > 9$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 5$ . Then  $\sigma = 10, f = 2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 = 10 - 5B$  and  $g_0 = 81$ . The equation  $12 = F(5) = 2x_1$  has a solution  $x_1 = 6$  and so  $t_3 + t_4 = x_1 = 6$ . Hence,

$$t_2 + t_5 + t_3 + t_4 = 9$$
;  $t_2 + 10t_5 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 81$ .

Therefore,

$$t_2 + t_5 = 3;$$
  $3 + 9t_5 + 3 \cdot 6 + 3t_4 = 81.$ 

Hence,  $9t_5 + 3t_4 = 60$ ;  $3t_5 + t_4 = 20$ . But  $3t_5 + t_4 \le 9 + 6 = 15 < 20$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$ . If  $\nu_1 = 4$  then  $10 = F(4) = x_1 = t_3 > 9$ ; a contradiction.

#### **19.1.1** case p > 0.

Second, assume that  $p = \sigma - 2\nu_1 > 0$ . Then  $\tilde{A} = (p+3\nu_1-2)B+2f-2\nu_1-4$  and assume  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ .

We shall study in the following cases : 1) B=0, 2 B=1, 3  $B\geq 2$  separately.

case 1) B = 0. Then  $\tilde{A} = 2f - 2\nu_1 - 4$ ,  $f = \sigma + u = p + 2\nu_1 + u$ ,  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(u + p)$ , where p > 0,  $u \ge 0$ .

From

$$2\nu_1 + 2 = \zeta + (2p + 2u + 2\nu_1 - 4)p + 2(\nu_1 - 2)(u + p),$$

it follows that

$$\zeta = 2(1 - u - 2p)\nu_1 + 8p + 4u - 4p^2 - 4pu + 2.$$

By  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ ,

$$\zeta \le 8(1 - u - 2p)\nu_1 + 8p + 4u - 4p^2 - 4pu + 2 = 10 - 8p - 2p^2 - 2pu - 4u.$$

Hence,  $p = 1, u = 0, \zeta = 0, \nu_1 = 4$ ; thus  $\sigma = 9, g_0 = 64, t_3 = 0$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 64$ .

Thus  $5t_4 = 55, t_4 = 11$ ; a contradiction.

case 2) B = 1. Then  $\tilde{A} = p + 3\nu_1 - 2 + 2u - 4 = p + 3\nu_1 + 2u - 6, f = <math>\nu_1 + u, \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ , where  $p > 0, u \ge 0$ . Thus

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = (2 - 3p - 2u)\nu_1 + 2 + 4u + (6 - p - 2u)p$$
.

By  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ ,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le 8 - 12p - 8u + 2 + 4u + (6 - p - 2u)p = 10 - 6p - 4u - (p + 2u)p$$
.

Therefore, p=1, u=0.

Hence,  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 7 - \nu_1$ . Recalling the definition of  $\zeta_{\nu_1}$ , we obtain

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = 7 - \nu_1 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + \cdots$$

• If  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$  then  $\nu_1 = 7, t_3 = \dots = t_6 = 0$  and so  $\sigma = 15, f = 7$ . Therefore,  $g_0 = 14 \cdot 6 + 7 \cdot 15 = 189$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_7 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 21t_7 = 189$ .

From this, it follows that  $t_2 = 0, t_7 = 9$ . Hence, the type is  $[15 * 22, 1; 7^9]$ .

• If  $\zeta_{\nu_1} > 0$  then  $7 - \nu_1 = F(\nu_1) \ge (\nu_1 - 3)$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 \le 5$ . Thus here are two cases:

case (1)  $\nu_1 = 5$ . Then  $\sigma = 11, f = 5, g_0 = 95$ . Since  $7 - \nu_1 = 2 = F(5) = 2x_1$ , it follows that  $x_1 = t_3 + t_4 = 1$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_5 + t_3 + t_4 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 10t_5 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 95$ .

This yields  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 28$  and so  $t_5 = 9, t_4 = 1, r \ge 10$ ; a contradiction. case (2)  $\nu_1 = 4$ . Then  $\sigma = 9, f = 4, g_0 = 60$ . Since  $7 - \nu_1 = 3 = F(4) = x_1$ , it follows that  $x_1 = t_3 = 3$ . By genus formula

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 60$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 5t_4 = 51$ ;  $5t_4 = 45$ ,  $t_4 = 9$ , r > 9 + 3 = 12, which is a contradiction.

case 3)  $B \ge 2$ . Then we can derive a contradiction by the same argument as before.

### **19.1.2** case p = 0.

Third, assume that  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$ . Then  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1) > 0$ .

We shall study in the following cases : 1)  $B=0,\,2)$   $B=1,\,3)$   $B\geq 2,$  separately.

case 1) B = 0:  $f = \sigma + u = 2\nu_1 + u$  and  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u > 0$ . Hence,  $2\nu_1 + 2 = \zeta + 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ , i.e.,  $\zeta = 2(1 - u)\nu_1 + 2 + 4u$ .

In the case when u = 1, we get  $\zeta = 6$ . Thus  $6 = F(\nu_1) \ge \nu_1 - 3$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 \le 9$ . We shall examine the following 7 cases separately.

• case  $\nu_1 = 9$ .

Then  $6 = F(9) = (9-3)x_1$  and so  $t_3 + t_8 = x_1 = 1$ . Further,  $\sigma = 18, f = 19, g_0 = 17 \cdot 18 = 306$ . By genus formula,

$$t_3 + t_8 + t_2 + t_9 = 9$$
,  $3t_3 + 28t_8 + t_2 + 36t_9 = 306$ ,

$$2t_3 + 27t_8 + 35t_9 = 297$$
,  $25t_8 + 35t_9 = 295$ .

Hence,  $5t_8 + 7t_9 = 59$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 8$ .

Then  $6 = F(8) = 5x_1 + 8x_2 + 9x_3 + \cdots$ , which has no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 7$ .

Then  $6 = F(7) = 4x_1 + 6x_2$ , which has a solution  $t_3 + t_6 = x_1 = 0, t_4 + t_5 = x_2 = 1$ .

Further,  $\sigma = 14, f = 15, g_0 = 13 \cdot 14 = 182$ . By genus formula,

$$t_4 + t_5 + t_2 + t_7 = 9$$
,  $6t_4 + 10t_5 + t_2 + 21t_7 = 182$ ,

$$5t_4 + 9t_5 + 20t_7 = 173, \quad 4t_5 + 20t_7 = 173 - 5 = 168.$$

Hence,  $t_5 + 5t_7 = 42$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 6$ .

Then  $6 = F(7) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$ , which has a solution  $t_3 + t_5 = x_1 = 2, t_4 = x_2 = 0$ .

Further,  $\sigma = 12, f = 13, g_0 = 11 \cdot 12 = 132$ . By genus formula,

$$t_3 + t_5 + t_2 + t_6 = 9$$
,  $3t_3 + 10t_5 + t_2 + 15t_6 = 132$ ,

$$2t_3 + 9t_5 + 14t_6 = 123, \quad 7t_5 + 14t_6 = 119,$$

Hence,  $t_5 + 2t_6 = 17$ ; a contradiction.

case  $\nu_1 = 5$ .

Then  $6 = F(5) = 2x_1$ , which has a solution  $t_3 + t_4 = x_1 = 3$ . Further,  $\sigma = 10, f = 11, g_0 = 9 \cdot 10 = 90$ . By genus formula,

$$t_3 + t_4 + t_2 + t_5 = 9$$
,  $3t_3 + 6t_4 + t_2 + 10t_5 = 90$ ,

$$2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 81$$
,  $3t_4 + 9t_5 = 75$ .

Hence,  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 25$ ,; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$ .

Then  $6 = F(4) = x_1$ , which has a solution  $t_3 = x_1 = 6$ . Further,  $\sigma = 8, f = 9, g_0 = 7 \cdot 8 = 56$ . By genus formula,

$$t_3 + t_2 + t_4 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + t_4 = 3$ ,  $3t_3 + t_2 + 6t_4 = 56$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 5t_4 = 47$ ,  $5t_4 = 47 - 12 = 35$ ,  $t_4 = 7$ ; a contradiction.

In the case when u = 2,  $\zeta = 10 - 2\nu_1$ . Thus  $10 - 2\nu_1 = F(\nu_1) \ge \nu_1 - 3$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 \le 4$  and so  $\nu_1 = 4$ . Therefore,  $2 = F(4) = x_1 = t_3$ . Further,  $\sigma = 8, f = 10, g_0 = 7 \cdot 9 = 63$ .

By genus formula,

$$t_3 + t_2 + t_4 = 9$$
,  $t_2 + t_4 = 7$ ,  $3t_3 + t_2 + 6t_4 = 63$ .

 $2t_3 + 5t_4 = 54$ ,  $5t_4 = 54 - 4 = 50$ ,  $t_4 = 8$ , a contradiction.

In the case when u = 3,  $2\nu_1 + 2 = \zeta = 14 - 4\nu_1$ . Hence,  $\nu_1 = 2$ .

case 2) 
$$B = 1$$
:  $f = \nu_1 + u$  and  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u > 0$ . Hence,  $2\nu_1 + 2 = \zeta + 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ , i.e.,  $\zeta = 2(1 - u)\nu_1 + 2 + 4u$ .

case 3) 
$$B \ge 2$$
:  $f = u$  and  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1) > 0$ . When  $B = 2$ ,  $2\nu_1 + 2 = \zeta + 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ , i.e.,  $\zeta = 2(1 - u)\nu_1 + 2 + 4u$ .

In both cases, we are able to derive contradictions.

## **19.2** case $\beta = 7$

Then  $\rho_{\nu_1} = \nu_1 + 3$ ; Hence, by Lemma 11,

$$\nu_1 + 3 = \zeta_{\nu_1} + \theta_{\nu_1}$$
.

First assume that  $\theta_{\nu_1} = 0$ .

Then  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$  and  $f + B\nu_1 - 2\nu_1 = 0$ .

$$\nu_1 + 3 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + 3(\nu_1 - 5)x_3 + \cdots$$

To find the maximal  $\nu_1$ , we suppose that  $\nu_1 + 3 \ge 2x_2(\nu_1 - 4)$ . Then  $\nu_1 \ge 11$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 11$ . From hypothesis,  $x_2 = 1$  and  $x_j = 0$  if  $j \neq 2$ . Therefore, since  $\sigma = 22, g_0 = 21^2 = 441$ ,

$$1 = x_2 = t_4 + t_9, t_4 + t_9 + t_2 + t_{11} = 10, 6t_4 + 36t_9 + t_2 + 55t_{11} = 441.$$

$$5t_4 + 35t_9 + 54t_{11} = 431; 5 + 30t_9 + 54t_{11} = 431.$$

Therefore,  $30t_9 + 54t_{11} = 426, 5t_9 + 9t_{11} = 71$ . There exist no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 10$ .

$$13 = F(10) = 7x_1 + 12x_2$$
.

There exist no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 9$  Then  $\sigma = 18, g_0 = 17^2 = 289$ .

$$12 = F(9) = 6x_1 + 10x_2 + 12x_3.$$

There exist two solutions (1)  $t_3 + t_8 = x_1 = 2$  and (2)  $t_5 + t_6 = x_3 = 1$ . In case (1),

$$t_3 + t_8 = 2$$
,  $t_3 + t_8 + t_2 + t_9 = 10$ ,  $3t_3 + 28t_8 + t_2 + 36t_9 = 289$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 27t_8 + 35t_9 = 279$ ;  $5t_8 + 7t_9 = 55$ , a contradiction. In case (2),

$$t_5 + t_6 = 1, t_5 + t_6 + t_2 + t_9 = 10, 10t_5 + 15t_6 + t_2 + 36t_9 = 289.$$

Hence, ;  $t_6 + 7t_9 = 54$ , a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 8$ .

$$11 = F(8) = 5x_1 + 8x_2 + 9x_3$$
.

There exist no solutions.

• case  $\nu_1 = 7$  Then  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13^2 = 169$  and hence we get

$$10 = F(7) = 4x_1 + 6x_2$$
.

Then  $x_1 = x_2 = 1$ . Hence,  $t_3 + t_6 = x_1 = t_4 + t_5 = x_2 = 1$ . Thus

$$t_3 + t_6 + t_4 + t_5 + t_2 + t_7 = 10$$
,  $3t_3 + 15t_6 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 + t_2 + 21t_7 = 169$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 14t_6 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 + 20t_7 = 159, 12t_6 + 4t_5 + 20t_7 = 152$ .

Therefore,  $3t_6 + t_5 + 5t_7 = 38$ . Then  $t_6 = 1, t_5 = 0, t_7 = 7$  and the type is  $[14 * 14; 7^7, 6, 4, 2]$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 6$  Then  $\sigma = 12, g_0 = 11^2 = 121$  and hence we get

$$9 = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$$
.

Then  $x_1 = 3$ . Hence,  $t_3 + t_5 = x_1 = 3$ . Thus

$$t_3 + t_5 + t_2 + t_6 = 10$$
,  $3t_3 + 10t_5 + t_2 + 15t_6 = 121$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 9t_5 + 14t_6 = 111, 2 + 7t_5 + 14t_6 = 111; t_5 + 2t_6 = 15$ .

Therefore, we have two cases (1)  $t_5 = 1$ ,  $t_6 = 7$  and (2)  $t_5 = 3$ ,  $t_6 = 6$ . In case (1), the type is  $[12 * 12; 6^7, 5, 3^2]$  or its associates and in case (2), the type is  $[12 * 12; 6^6, 5^3, 2]$  or its associates.

• case  $\nu_1 = 5$  Then  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9^2 = 81$  and hence we get

$$8 = F(5) = 2x_1$$
.

Then  $x_1 = 4$ . Hence,  $t_3 + t_4 = x_1 = 4$ . Thus

$$t_3 + t_4 + t_2 + t_5 = 10$$
,  $3t_3 + 6t_4 + t_2 + 10t_5 = 81$ .

Hence,

$$2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 71; 3t_4 + 9t_5 = 71 - 8 = 63.$$

Therefore,  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 21$ ; Hence,  $t_5 = 6, t_4 = 3, t_3 = 1$  and the type is  $[10 * 10; 5^6, 4^3, 3]$  or its associates.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$  Then  $\sigma = 8, g_0 = 7^2 = 49$  and hence we get

$$7 = F(3) = t_3$$
.

Thus

$$t_3 + t_2 + t_4 = 10$$
,  $3t_3 + t_2 + 6t_4 = 49$ .

Therefore,  $t_2 + t_4 = 3,21 + 3 + 5t_4 = 49; 5t_4 = 25; t_4 = 5;$  a contradiction.

#### **19.2.1** case $\theta_{\nu_1} > 0$

Next assume that  $\theta_{\nu_1} > 0, p > 0$ .

Then  $\nu_1 + 3 = \zeta + \theta \ge 3\nu_1 - 5$ ; hence,  $\nu_1 \le 4$ .

When  $\nu_1 = 4$ , B = 1,  $\sigma = 9$ ; hence,  $\zeta = 0$ , f = 4. Thus  $g_0 = 8 \cdot 3 + 36 = 60$ . Therefore,

$$t_2 + t_4 = 10, \quad t_2 + 6t_4 = 60.$$

Hence,  $5t_4 = 50$  and so  $t_4 = 10, t_2 = 0$ . The type is  $[9 * 13, 1; 4^{10}]$ .

Finally, assume that  $\theta_{\nu_1} > 0, p = 0$ . Then  $\tilde{A} = 0$  and  $\nu_1 + 3 = \zeta + \theta_{\nu_1}, \theta_{\nu_1} = \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1) > 0$ .

We shall study in the following cases: 1) B = 0, 2) B = 1 and 3)  $B \ge 2$ , separately.

case 1) B = 0:  $f = \sigma + u = 2\nu_1 + u$ ,  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f - 2\nu_1) = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ .

case 2) B = 1:  $f = \nu_1 + u, \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f - \nu_1) = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ .

case 3) B = 2:  $f = u, \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)f = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ .

In any cases,  $\nu_1 + 3 = \zeta + \theta_{\nu_1} \ge 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$  and thus  $3 + 4u \ge (2u - 1)\nu_1$ . If u = 1 then  $\nu_1 \le 7$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 7$  Then  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13 \cdot 14 = 182$ .  $\zeta = \nu_1 + 3 - \theta_{\nu_1} = \nu_1 + 3 - 2(\nu_1 - 2) = 7 - \nu_1 = 0$ . Hence,  $t_3 = t_4 = t_5 = t_6 = 0$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_7 = 10$$
,  $t_2 + 21t_7 = 182$ ,  $20t_7 = 172$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 6$ 

$$\zeta = \nu_1 + 3 - \theta_{\nu_1} = \nu_1 + 3 - 2(\nu_1 - 2) = 7 - \nu_1 = 1.$$

 $1 = \zeta = 3x_1 + \cdots$ , a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 5$  Then  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9 \cdot 10 = 90$  and hence we get

$$\zeta = \nu_1 + 3 - \theta_{\nu_1} = \nu_1 + 3 - 2(\nu_1 - 2) = 7 - \nu_1 = 2.$$

 $2 = \zeta = 2x_1 + \cdots$ . Hence,  $t_3 + t_4 = x_1 = 1$ .

$$t_3 + t_4 + t_2 + t_5 = 10$$
,  $3t_3 + 6t_4 + t_2 + 10t_5 = 90$ ,

$$2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 80;$$
  $2 + 3t_4 + 9t_5 = 80.$ 

Therefore,  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 26$ ; hence,  $t_4 = 2, t_5 = 8, t_3 = -1$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$  Then  $\sigma = 8, g_0 = 7 \cdot 8 = 56$  and hence we get

$$\zeta = \nu_1 + 3 - \theta_{\nu_1} = \nu_1 + 3 - 2(\nu_1 - 2) = 7 - \nu_1 = 3.$$

Hence,  $3 = \zeta = t_3$  and so

$$t_3 + t_4 + t_2 = 10$$
,  $3t_3 + 6t_4 + t_2 = 56$ ,

 $5t_4 = 40; t_4 = 8 > 7;$  a contradiction.

case 4)  $B \ge 3$ :  $f = u, \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + B\nu_1 - 2\nu_1) \ge 2(\nu_1 - 2)(u + \nu_1)$ . Hence,

$$\zeta = \nu_1 + 3 - \theta_{\nu_1} \le \nu_1 + 3 - 2(\nu_1 - 2)(u + \nu_1) \le \nu_1(1 - 4 - 2\nu_1) + 3 - 2(\nu_1 - 2) < 0;$$

a contradiction.

When u > 1, by the similar way, we can derive a contradiction.

#### **19.3** case $\beta = 8$

Then  $\rho_{\nu_1} = 4$ ; Hence, by Lemma 11,

$$4 = \zeta_{\nu_1} + \theta_{\nu_1}$$
.

First assume that  $\theta_{\nu_1} = 0$ .

Then  $\sigma = 2\nu_1$  and  $f + B\nu_1 - 2\nu_1 = 0$ .

$$4 = F(\nu_1) = (\nu_1 - 3)x_1 + 2(\nu_1 - 4)x_2 + 3(\nu_1 - 5)x_3 + \cdots$$

To find the maximal  $\nu_1$ , we suppose that  $4 \ge x_1(\nu_1 - 3)$ . Then  $\nu_1 \ge 7$ .

• case  $\nu_1 = 7$ . From hypothesis, it follows that  $x_1 = 1$  and  $x_j = 0$  if  $j \neq 1$ . Therefore, since  $\sigma = 14, g_0 = 13^2 = 169$ , we obtain

$$1 = x_1 = t_3 + t_6, t_3 + t_6 + t_2 + t_7 = 11, 3t_3 + 15t_6 + t_2 + 21t_7 = 169$$

$$2t_3 + 14t_6 + 20t_7 = 158$$
;  $6t_6 + 10t_7 = 78$ .

 $3t_6 + 5t_7 = 39$ ; hence,  $t_6 = 3$ ; a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 6$ . From hypothesis, it follows that  $4 = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$ . Then  $t_4 = x_2 = 1$ . Since  $\sigma = 12, g_0 = 11^2 = 121$ ,

$$t_4 + t_2 + t_6 = 11,6t_4 + t_2 + 15t_6 = 121,$$

 $14t_6 = 105$ , a contradiction.

• case  $\nu_1 = 5$ . From hypothesis, it follows that  $4 = F(5) = 2x_1$ . Then  $t_3 + t_4 = x_1 = 2$ . Since  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 9^2 = 81$ ,

$$t_3 + t_4 + t_2 + t_5 = 11, 3t_3 + 6t_4 + t_2 + 10t_5 = 81,$$

 $2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 70, 3t_4 + 9t_5 = 66; t_4 + 3t_5 = 22.$  Therefore,  $t_4 = 1, t_3 = 1, t_5 = 7, t_2 = 2$  and the type is  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3, 2^2]$  or its associates.

• case  $\nu_1 = 4$ . From hypothesis, it follows that  $4 = F(4) = x_1$ . Then  $t_3 = x_1 = 4$ . Since  $\sigma = 8, g_0 = 7^2 = 49$ , we obtain

$$t_3 + t_2 + t_4 = 11, 3t_3 + t_2 + 6t_4 = 49,$$

 $2t_3 + 5t_4 = 38, 5t_4 = 30; t_4 = 6, t_3 = 4, t_2 = 1.$  The type is  $[8 * 8; 4^6, 3^4, 2]$  or its associates.

## **19.3.1** case $\theta_{\nu_1} > 0$

Second, assume that  $\theta_{\nu_1} > 0, p > 0$ .

By  $4 = \rho_{\nu_1} > 3\nu_1 - 5$ ,  $9 > 3\nu_1$ , which contradicts the hypothesis  $\nu_1 \ge 4$ .

Third, assume that  $\theta_{\nu_1} > 0, p = 0$ . Then  $\tilde{A} = 0$  and  $4 = \zeta + \theta_{\nu_1}, \theta_{\nu_1} = \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f + \nu_1 B - 2\nu_1) > 0$ .

We shall study in the following cases 1) B = 0, 2) B = 1 and 3)  $B \ge 2$ , separately.

case 1) 
$$B = 0$$
:  $f = \sigma + u = 2\nu_1 + u$ ,  $\gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f - 2\nu_1) = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ .

case 2) 
$$B = 1$$
:  $f = \nu_1 + u, \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(f - \nu_1) = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ .

case 3) 
$$B = 2$$
:  $f = u, \gamma = 2(\nu_1 - 2)f = 2(\nu_1 - 2)u$ .

In any case,

$$4 = \zeta + \theta_{\nu_1} \ge 2(\nu_1 - 2)u \ge 4u \ge 4$$
.

Thus  $u = 1, \zeta = 0, \nu_1 = 4, \sigma = 8, g_0 = 56$ .

$$t_3 = 0, t_2 + t_4 = 11, t_2 + 6t_4 = 56.$$

 $5t_4 = 45; t_4 = 9, t_2 = 2$  and the type is  $[8 * 9; 4^9, 2^2]$  or its associates.

## **19.4** case $\beta = 9$

Then  $r = 12, \rho_{\nu_1} = 5 - \nu_1$ ; Hence, by Lemma 11,

$$5 - \nu_1 = \zeta_{\nu_1} + \theta_{\nu_1}$$
.

First assume that  $\zeta_{\nu_1} > 0$ .

From  $5 - \nu_1 \ge \zeta_{\nu_1} \ge \nu_1 - 3$ , it follows that  $\nu_1 = 4, \sigma = 8, g_0 = 49, 1 = \zeta_{\nu_1} = F(4) = x_1$ .

$$t_3 = 1, t_3 + t_2 + t_4 = 12, 3t_3 + t_2 + 6t_4 = 49.$$

Hence,  $2t_3 + 5t_4 = 37, 5t_4 = 35; t_4 = 7, t_3 = 1, t_2 = 4$ . The type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3, 2^4]$  or its associates.

Second assume that  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 0$ .

Suppose that A > 0.

Since  $\tilde{A} + \gamma \geq 3\nu_1 - 5$ , it follows that  $5 - \nu_1 \geq 3\nu_1 - 5$ ; hence,  $10 \geq 4\nu_1$ , which contradicts the hypothesis  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ .

Suppose that  $\tilde{A} = 0$ . Then  $5 - \nu_1 \ge 2(\nu_1 - 2)$ ; hence,  $9 \ge 3\nu_1$ , which contradicts the hypothesis  $\nu_1 \ge 4$ .

Therefore, we have established the classification of pairs (S, D) with  $g(D) = 0, \kappa[D] = 2, P_2[D] = 3$  as follows:

**Theorem 12** Pairs (S, D) with  $g(D) = 0, \kappa[D] = 2, P_2[D] = 3$  are classified as follows:

- 1. If  $D^2 = -6$  then r = 9 and
  - (a) if  $\sigma = 15$  then the type is  $[15 * 22, 1; 7^9]$ .
  - (b) If  $\sigma = 16$  then the type is  $[16 * 16; 8^6, 7^2, 6]$  or its associates.
  - (c) If  $\sigma = 20$  then the type is  $[20 * 20; 10^7, 9, 5]$  or its associates.
- 2. If  $D^2 = -7$  then r = 10 and
  - (a) If  $\sigma = 9$  then the type is  $[9 * 13, 1; 4^{10}]$ .
  - (b) If  $\sigma = 10$  then the type is  $[10 * 10; 5^6, 4^3, 3]$  or its associates.
  - (c) If  $\sigma = 12$  then the type is  $[12*12; 6^7, 5, 3^2]$  or  $[12*12; 6^6, 5^3, 2]$  or their associates.
  - (d) If  $\sigma = 14$  then the type is  $[14 * 14; 7^7, 6, 4, 2]$ .
- 3. If  $D^2 = -8$  then r = 11 and
  - (a) if  $\sigma = 7$  then the type is  $[7 * 10, 1; 3^{11}]$ .
  - (b) If  $\sigma = 8$  then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^6, 3^4, 2]$  or  $[8 * 9; 4^9, 2^2]$  or their associates.
  - (c) If  $\sigma = 10$  then the type is  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3, 2^2]$  or its associates.
- 4. If  $D^2 = -9$  then r = 12 and the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^7, 3, 2^4]$  or  $[6 * 7; 3^9, 2^3]$  or their associates.
- 5. If  $D^2 = -10$  then r = 13 and the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^7]$  or its associates.
- 6. If  $D^2 = -11$  then r = 14 and the type is  $[5*7, 1; 2^{14}]$ .
- 7. If  $D^2 = -12$  then r = 15 and the type is  $[4*6;2^{15}]$  or its associates.

Note that pairs (S,D) with  $g(D) > 0, P_2[D] = 3$  are enumerated as follows:

**Proposition 21** Pairs (S,D) with  $g(D) > 0, \kappa[D] = 2, P_2[D] = 3$  are classified as follows:

- 1. If  $\kappa[D] = 1$  then g = 2 the type is [2\*3;1] or its associates, where  $D^2 = Z^2 = 0$ .
- 2. If  $\kappa[D] = 2$  then g = 1 and
  - (a) if  $D^2 = -3$ , then the type is  $[12 * 12; 6^6, 5^3]$  or its associates.
  - (b) If  $D^2 = -4$ , then the type is  $[8 * 8; 4^6, 3^4]$  or  $[8 * 9; 4^9, 2]$  or  $[10 * 10; 5^7, 4, 3, 2]$  or their associates.
  - (c) If  $D^2 = -5$ , then the type is  $[6*7;3^9,2^2]$  or  $[8*8;4^7,3,2^3]$  or their associates.
  - (d) If  $D^2 = -6$ , then the type is  $[6*6; 3^6, 2^6]$  or its associates.
  - (e) If  $D^2 = -7$ , then the type is  $[5*7, 1; 2^{13}]$ .
  - (f) If  $D^2 = -8$ , then the type is  $[4*6; 2^{14}]$  or its associates

# **20** invariant $\psi$

The invariant  $\psi$  defined to be  $\Omega - \omega$  is non-negative, if  $\sigma \geq 6$  except for the type  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ . Next, we shall compute  $A,\alpha,\Omega$  and  $\omega$  for pairs with  $\nu_1 \leq 3$  as follows.

### 20.1 examples

If the type is  $[\sigma * e, B; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$ , then letting f be  $e - B\sigma$ , we obtain

$$D^{2} = \sigma \tilde{B} - 9t_{3} - 4t_{2} = \tau_{0} - 9t_{3} - 4t_{2},$$

$$Z^{2} = (\sigma - 2)(\tilde{B} - 4) - 4t_{3} - t_{2} = \tau_{2} - 4t_{3} - t_{2},$$

$$g = \frac{(\sigma - 1)(\tilde{B} - 2)}{2} - 3t_{3} - t_{2} = \frac{\tau_{1}}{2} - 3t_{3} - t_{2}.$$

Hence,

$$\begin{split} A &= \tau_2 - \frac{\tau_0}{2} + 1 - t_3 &= \frac{\tau_3}{2} - 1 - t_3, \\ \alpha &= \sigma \tilde{B} - 4\sigma - 2\tilde{B} - 3t_3 &= \tau_2 - 8 - 3t_3, \\ \Omega &= \sigma \tilde{B} - 8\sigma - 4\tilde{B} + 24 + t_2 &= \tau_4 - 8 + t_2, \\ \omega &= \frac{\sigma \tilde{B} - 6\sigma - 3\tilde{B}}{2} + t_2 &= \frac{\tau_3}{2} - 9 + t_2. \end{split}$$

Therefore,

$$\psi = \Omega - \omega = \sigma \tilde{B}/2 - 5\sigma - 5\tilde{B}/2 + 24 = (\sigma - 5)(\tilde{B} - 10)/2 - 1 = \tau_5/2 - 1$$
.

If  $\sigma \geq 6$  and  $\psi < 0$  then  $\tilde{B} = 10$  and therefore, the type is  $[6 * 8, 1; 2^r]$  and in this case  $\psi = -1$ .

If  $\sigma \geq 6$  and  $\psi = 0$  then  $\tau_5 = 2$ ; hence, either 1)  $\sigma = 6, \tilde{B} = 12$  or 2)  $\sigma = 7, \tilde{B} = 11$ .

In the case 1), the type is  $[6*6;3^{t_3},2^{t_2}]$  or their associates;

In the case 2), the type is  $[7*9,1;2^{t_2}]$  or their associates because  $2 = f \ge \nu_1$ .

If  $\sigma \geq 6$  and  $\psi = 1$  then  $\tau_5 = 4$ ; hence,  $\sigma = 6, \tilde{B} = 14$ ; the type is  $[6*7; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$  or their associates;

If  $\sigma \geq 6$  and  $\psi = 2$  then  $\tau_5 = 6$ ; hence, 1)  $\sigma = 6, \tilde{B} = 16$  or 2)  $\sigma = 7, \tilde{B} = 13$  or 3)  $\sigma = 8, \tilde{B} = 12$ .

In case 1), the type is  $[6*8;3^{t_3},2^{t_2}]$  or their associates.

In case 2), the type is  $[7*10,1;3^{t_3},2^{t_2}]$  or their associates;

In case 3), the type is  $[8*10,1;2^r]$  or their associates.

In that follows, we assume that  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ .

## 20.2 pairs with small $\psi$

Under the assumption that  $\sigma \geq 6$  and  $\psi \geq 0$ , we shall determine the type of pairs with small  $\psi$ . Say  $\psi = 0, 1, 2$ .

Putting  $\overline{g} = g - 1$ , we obtain

$$\omega = 3\overline{g} - D^2 \ge 0, \ \Omega = 3Z^2 - 4\overline{g} = \omega + \psi.$$

Thus,

$$D^2 = 3\overline{g} - \omega$$
,  $Z^2 = \frac{4\overline{g} + \omega + \psi}{3}$ .

Since  $\overline{g} + \omega + \psi = 3Z^2 - 3\overline{g} = 3A$ , introduce a parameter k by k = A - 1; hence,  $\overline{g} + \omega + \psi = 3k + 3$ .

Then

$$D^2=4\overline{g}+\psi-3k-3,\ Z^2=\overline{g}+k+1,$$

and

$$8 - r = K_S^2 = Z^2 + D^2 - 4\overline{g} = \overline{g} + \psi - 2k - 2.$$

Hence,

$$\overline{q} - r = 2\overline{q} + \psi - 2k - 10$$
.

Suppose that k < 0. Then k = -1 and 1)  $g = 1, \omega = \psi = 0$  or 2)  $g = 0, \omega + \psi = 1$ . In the case 1),  $\Omega = 0$ . However,  $\Omega = 3Z^2 - 4\overline{g} = 3Z^2 \ge 3$ ; a contradiction.

In the case 2),  $\Omega=1$ . However,  $1=\Omega=3Z^2-4\overline{g}=3Z^2+4\geq 4\geq 4$ ; a contradiction.

Therefore,  $k \geq 0$  and

$$\xi_0 = 8 - \frac{D^2}{2} + \overline{g} - r = \frac{\psi - k - 1}{2},$$

and thus

$$\xi_1 = 4\overline{g} - D^2 = 3k + 3 - \psi$$
.

Then by Lemma, we obtain

$$\zeta_{\nu_1} = (\psi - k - 1)\nu_1 + 3k + 3 - \psi + \tilde{\eta}.$$

Supposing that  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ , we shall enumerate types of pairs satisfying the above equation under the hypothesis  $\psi = 0, 1, 2$ .

First, we note that if  $\psi = 2$  then k > 0 or g = 0.

Claim 9 If  $\psi = 2$  then k > 0 or g = 0.

Actually, suppose that k=0. Then  $\omega + \overline{g} = 1$ . Hence, 1)  $\omega = 1, \overline{g} = 0, \Omega = 3 \text{ or 2})$   $\omega = 0, \overline{g} = 2, \Omega = 3 \text{ or 3})$   $\omega = 2, \overline{g} = -1, \Omega = 4$ .

In the case 1),  $D^2=-1, Z^2=1, r=10-2-\overline{g}=8$ . Therefore,  $K_S^2=0$  and then by Riemann-Roch,  $|-K_S|\neq\emptyset$ . Hence,  $-K_S\cdot(2Z-D)\geq0$ . But

$$0 \le -K_S \cdot (2Z - D) = -(Z - D) \cdot (2Z - D) = -2Z^2 - D^2 = -1.$$

This is a contradiction.

In the case 2),  $\Omega=2, Z^2=2, g=2$ . But by the previous result,  $Z^2=g=2$  implies that  $\nu_1=2$ , which contradicts the hypothesis  $\nu_1\geq 4$ .

In the case 3),  $D^2=-5, Z^2=0, r=9.$  Therefore, since  $Z^2=0$  , it follows that g=0.

Note that in the case 3), the type becomes either  $[10 * 11; 5^9]$  or  $[12 * 12; 6^7, 5, 4]$  or their associates.

### **20.3** case $p \ge 1$

First assume that  $p \ge 1$ . Then by Lemma,  $\tilde{\eta} \le (\delta_{1,B} + 2 - 2\nu_1)p$ . Hence,

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} \le (\psi - k - 1)\nu_1 + 3k + 3 - \psi + (\delta_{1,B} + 2 - 2\nu_1)p$$

$$= (\psi - k - 3)\nu_1 + 3k + 5 + \delta_{1,B} - \psi + (p - 1)(\delta_{1,B} + 2 - 2\nu_1)$$

$$= (\psi - k - 3)(\nu_1 - 3) + (p - 1)(\delta_{1,B} + 2 - 2\nu_1) - 4 + 2\psi + \delta_{1,B}$$

$$\le -4 + 2\psi + \delta_{1,B}.$$

Therefore, since  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ , it follows that  $\psi = 2, \nu_1 = 4, p = 1, \sigma = 9, k = 0, g = 0$ . Hence,  $3 = 3k + 3 = -1 + \omega + \psi = -1 + \omega + 2$ . This implies that  $\omega = 2, \omega = -3 - D^2$ . Therefore,  $D^2 = -5, g = 0$ . But by Theorem ,  $\sigma = 10, 12$ , which contradicts  $\sigma = 9$ . But  $\nu_1 \geq 4$  is assumed.

### **20.4** case p = 0

Then  $\eta = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 - f) \le 0$  and

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = (\psi - k - 1)\nu_1 + 3k + 3 - \psi + \eta.$$

If  $\psi = 0$  then  $0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = (3 - \nu_1)(k+1) + \eta \le (3 - \nu_1)(k+1)$ . This implies that  $\nu_1 = 3$  and  $\eta = 0$ . Hence, the type becomes  $[6*6; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$  or its associates. Note that  $k = t_2 = \omega$ .

#### **20.5** case $\psi = 1$

If  $\psi = 1$  then  $0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = -\nu_1 k + 3k + 2 + \eta$ .

If  $\eta \neq 0$  then  $\eta \leq 4 - 2\nu_1$  and hence,

$$0 \le -\nu_1 k + 3k + 2 + 4 - 2\nu_1 = -(k+2)\nu_1 + 3k + 6 = -(k+2)(\nu_1 - 3).$$

However, since  $\nu_1 \geq 4$ , it follows that -(k+2) < 0, a contradiction.

Suppose that  $\eta = 0$ ,i.e.,  $\tilde{B} = 4\nu_1$  and  $g_0 = (2\nu_1 - 1)^2$ . Since  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = -\nu_1 k + 3k + 2 = F(\nu_1)$ , it follows that case A):  $-\nu_1 k + 3k + 2 = F(\nu_1) = 0$  or case B):  $-\nu_1 k + 3k + 2 = F(\nu_1) \ge \nu_1 - 3$ .

In the case A),  $-\nu_1 k + 3k + 2 = k(3 - \nu_1) + 2 = 0$ . Hence, 1)  $\nu_1 = 5, k = 1$  or  $2)\nu_1 = 4, k = 2$ .

In the case B), it follows that  $\nu_1 \leq \frac{3k+5}{k+1}$ . In particular, if k=0 then  $\nu_1 \leq 5$ . Moreover, if k=1 then  $\nu_1 \leq 4$ .

• Suppose that  $\nu_1 = 5$ . In both cases A) and B), k = 0, 1, 2. Hence,  $g_0 = 81, r = 10 - \psi - \overline{g} + 2k = 10 - g + 2k$ 

In the case A),  $k = 1, r = 12 - g, t_3 = t_4 = 0$ . By genus formula, we get

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = r = 12 - g, t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - g.$$

So,

$$t_2 + t_5 = r = 12 - g, t_2 + 10t_5 = 81 - g; 9t_5 = 69.$$

This is a contradiction.

In the case B), k = 0, r = 10 - g and  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 2 = (5 - 3)x_1$ , which induces that  $x_1 = 1, x_1 = t_3 + t_4$ . By genus formula, we get

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = r = 10 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - g$ .

Hence,  $2t_3 + 5t_4 + 9t_5 = 71$ ;  $3t_4 + 9t_5 = 71 - 2 = 69$ . Therefore,  $t_4 + 3t_5 = 23$ . Hence,  $t_5 = 7$ ,  $t_4 = 2$ ,  $t_3 = -1$ , that is a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then k = 0, 1, 2;  $g_0 = 49, r = 10 + 2k - 1 - \overline{g} = 10 + 2k - g$ . Hence,  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = 2 - k = x_1$ , which induces that  $x_1 = t_3 = 2 - k$ . By genus formula, we get

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = r = 10 + 2k - q, t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - q.$$

Hence,  $2t_3+5t_4=39-2k; t_4=7, t_3=2-k, t_2=1+3k-g$ . The type becomes  $[8*8;4^7,3^{2-k},2^{1+3k-g}]$  or its associates. Here, $\omega=2+t_2=3+3k-g, \Omega=3+t_2=4+3k-g$  and  $\psi=\Omega-\omega=1$ . Moreover,k=0,1,2 and  $g\leq 7$ .

## **20.6** case $\psi = 2$

First note that when  $\psi = 2$ , k = 0 implies that g = 0 and the type has already been eumerated. So we assume k = 0.

Second, since  $\psi = 2$  and p = 0, it follows that

$$0 < \zeta_{\nu_1} = (1 - k)\nu_1 + 3k + 1 + \eta$$
.

• If  $\eta \neq 0$  then  $\eta = 2(\nu_1 - 2)(2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 - f) < -2(\nu_1 - 2)$  and thus

$$0 < \zeta_{\nu_1} < (1-k)\nu_1 + 3k + 1 - 2(\nu_1 - 2)$$
.

Then  $(k+1)\nu_1 \leq 3k+5$ , which implies that  $\nu_1 \leq 4$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$  then k = 1 and  $\zeta_4 = 4 + \eta \le 0$ . Moreover,  $2\nu_1 - B\nu_1 - f = -1$ , i.e. 4B + f = 9 and so  $\tilde{B} = 18, \zeta_4 = 0$ . This implies that  $t_3 = 0, g_0 = 56$ . By  $r = 10 + 2k - \psi - \overline{g} = 11 - g$  and genus formula

$$t_2 + t_4 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 = 56 - g$ .

Hence,  $t_4 = 9$ ,  $t_2 = 2 - g$ . Thus the type becomes  $[8 * 9; 4^9, 2^{2-g}]$ .

## **20.7** case $\eta = 0$

In this case,  $\tilde{B} = 4\nu_1$ .

From  $\zeta_{\nu_1} = (1-k)\nu_1 + 3k + 1 = F(\nu_1)$ , we obtain two cases: case A):  $(1-k)\nu_1 + 3k + 1 = F(\nu_1) = 0$  and case B):  $(1-k)\nu_1 + 3k + 1 = F(\nu_1) \neq 0$ . In the case A), $(\nu_1 - 3)(k - 1) = 4$ . Hence, 1)  $\nu_1 = 7, k = 2$  or 2) $\nu_1 = 5, k = 3$  or 3)  $\nu_1 = 4, k = 5$ .

- If  $\nu_1 = 7, k = 2$  then  $g_0 = 169, r = 13 g$ . Since  $F(\nu_1) = 0$ , it follows that  $t_3 = \cdots = t_6 = 0$ . By genus formula,  $t_2 + t_7 = 13 g$ ,  $t_2 + 21t_7 = 169 g$ . Hence  $20t_7 = 156$ ; a contradiction.
- If  $\nu_1 = 5, k = 3$  then  $g_0 = 81, r = 15 g$ . Since  $F(\nu_1) = 0$ , it follows that  $t_3 = t_4 = 0$ . By genus formula,  $t_2 + t_5 = 15 g$ ,  $t_2 + 10t_7 = 81 g$ . Hence  $9t_5 = 66$ ; a contradiction.
- If  $\nu_1 = 4, k = 5$  then  $g_0 = 49, r = 19 g$ . Since  $F(\nu_1) = 0$ , it follows that  $t_3 = 0$ . By genus formula,  $t_4 = 6, t_2 = 13 g$ . Thus the type is  $[8*8; 4^6, 2^{13-g}]$  or their associates.

In the case B),

$$0 \le \zeta_{\nu_1} = (1-k)\nu_1 + 3k + 1 = F(\nu_1) \ge \nu_1 - 3,$$

and so  $\nu_1 \le \frac{3k+4}{k} = 3 + \frac{4}{k} \le 7$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 7$ , then  $k = 1, \sigma = 14, \tilde{B} = 28$  and

$$4 = F(\nu_1) = F(7) = (7-3)x_1 + \cdots$$

Thus  $x_1 = t_3 + t_6 = 1$ ,  $x_2 = x_3 = 0$ . Since  $r = 10 + 2k - \psi - g + 1$ , we obtain

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_6 + t_7 = 11 - q$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 15t_6 + 21t_7 = 169 - q$ .

From this, it follows that  $3t_6 + 5t_7 = 39, t_6 = 0, 1$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 6$ , then  $\sigma = 12$ ,  $g_0 = 121$  and  $k \le \frac{4}{\nu_1 - 3} = \frac{4}{3}$ . Hence k = 1,  $4 = F(\nu_1) = F(6) = 3x_1 + 4x_2$ ; thus  $x_2 = t_4 = 1$ ,  $x_1 = t_3 = t_5 = 0$ . Since  $r = 10 + 2k - \psi - g + 1 = 11 - g$ , we obtain

$$t_2 + t_4 + t_6 = 11 - g$$
,  $t_2 + 6t_4 + 15t_6 = 1 = 121 - g$ .

Then  $14t_6 = 105$ ; a contradiction.

• If  $\nu_1 = 5$ , then  $\sigma = 10, g_0 = 81$  and  $k \le \frac{4}{\nu_1 - 3} = \frac{4}{2} = 2$ . Hence k = 1, 2. Further,  $6 - 2k = F(\nu_1) = F(5) = 2x_1$ ; thus  $x_1 = t_3 + t_4 = 3 - k$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 + t_5 = 9 + 2k - g$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 + 10t_5 = 81 - g$ .

Hence,  $3t_4 + 9t_5 = 66$ . Then  $t_5 = 7, t_4 = 1, t_3 = 2 - k, t_2 = 3k - g - 1$ . The type becomes  $[10*10; 5^7, 4, 3^{2-k}, 2^{3k-g-1}]$  or its associates. In this case,  $\Omega = 7 - g, \omega = 3k - g - 1$ .

• If  $\nu_1 = 4$ , then  $\sigma = 8$ ,  $g_0 = 49$  and  $k \le \frac{4}{\nu_1 - 3} = \frac{4}{1} = 4$ . Hence k = 1, 2, 3, 4. Further,  $5 - k = F(\nu_1) = F(4) = x_1$ ; thus  $x_1 = t_3 = 5 - k$ . By genus formula,

$$t_2 + t_3 + t_4 = r = 9 + 2k - q$$
,  $t_2 + 3t_3 + 6t_4 = 49 - q$ .

Then  $k = 1, t_4 = 6, t_3 = 5 - k = 4, t_2 = 3k - g - 2 = 1 - g$ . Thus the type becomes  $[8*8; 4^6, 3^{5-k}, 2^{3k-2-g}]$  or its associates, where  $g \le 1$ . In this case,  $\Omega = 6, \omega = 4$ .

### 20.8 classification by $P_{3,1}[D]$

Consequently, we obtain the following result.

**Theorem 13** Suppose that a minimal pair (S,D) is derived from a #-minimal pair  $(\Sigma_B,C)$  of type  $[\sigma*e,B;\nu_1,\cdots,\nu_r]$  where  $\sigma \geq 3$  or (S,D) is just  $(\mathbf{P}^2,D)$  of type [d;1] where  $d\geq 9$ .

- 1. case  $P_{3,1}[D] = 0$ . Then either  $\sigma \le 5$  or the type is  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ , where g = 20 r.
- 2. case  $P_{3,1}[D] = 1$ . Then
  - (a) the type becomes  $[6*6;3^{t_3},2^{t_2}]$ , where  $t_3 \le 8, t_2 = 25-3t_3-g$  or their associates or
  - (b)  $[7*9,1;2^{27-g}]$ .
  - (c) The type is [9; 1].
- 3.  $case P_{3,1}[D] = 2$ . Then
  - (a) the type becomes  $[6*7;3^{t_3},2^{t_2}]$  or their associates or
  - (b)  $[8*8;4^7,3^{2-k},2^{1+3k-g}]$  or their associates.
- 4. case  $P_{3,1}[D] = 3$ .
  - (a) If  $\sigma = 6$  then the type becomes  $[6 * 8; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$  or its associates.
  - (b) If  $\sigma = 7$  then the type becomes  $[7 * 10, 1; 3^{t_3}, 2^{t_2}]$ .
  - (c) If  $\sigma = 8$  then the type becomes
    - i.  $[8*8; 4^6, 3^{5-k}, 2^{3k-g-2}]$ , where  $k \le 5, g \le 3k-2$  or
    - ii.  $[8*9;4^9,2^{2-g}]$ , where  $g \leq 2$  or their associates or
    - iii.  $[8*10,1;2^g]$ , where  $g \leq 35$  or their associates.
  - (d) If  $\sigma = 10$  then the type becomes
    - i.  $[10*10; 5^7, 4, 3^{2-k}, 2^{3k-g-1}]$  or its associates, where  $g \leq 2, or$
    - ii.  $[10*11;5^9]$  where g=0 or its associates.
  - (e) If  $\sigma = 12$  then the type becomes  $[12*12;6^7,5,4]$  or its associates where g = 0.
  - (f) The type is [10;1].

# 21 relations between $Z^2$ and $D^2$

Next, we shall study relations between  $Z^2$  and  $D^2$ . First , we suppose that  $\nu_1 \leq 2$ .

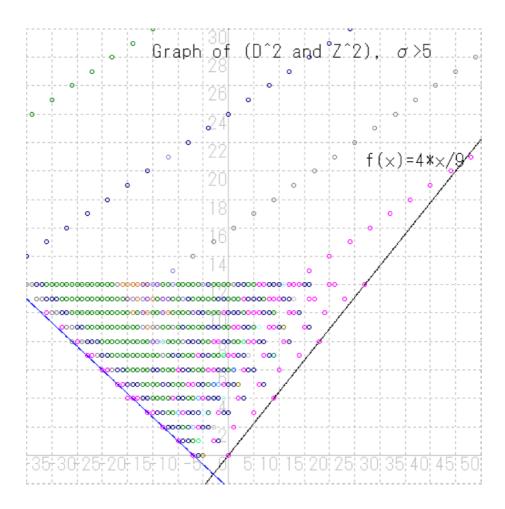


Figure 5: relations between  $D^2$  and  $Z^2$ , with  $\sigma \ge 6$ 

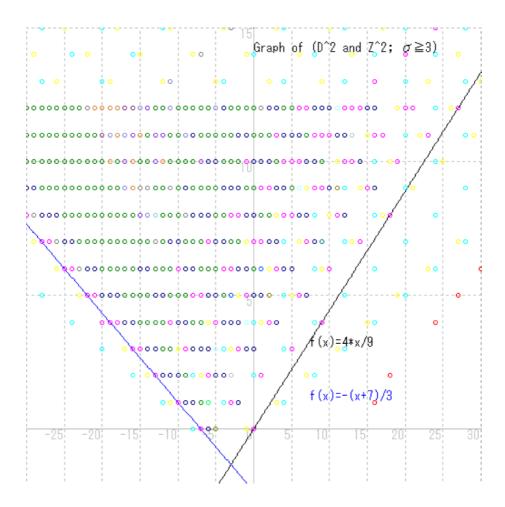


Figure 6: relations between  $D^2$  and  $Z^2$ , with  $\sigma \geq 6$ 

### **21.1** Case $\nu_1 \leq 2$

If a minimal pair (S, D) with  $\kappa[D] = 2$  is derived from a #- minimal model of type  $[\sigma * e, B; 2^r]$ , then

$$D^2 = \sigma \tilde{B} - 4r, \ 2\overline{g} = \sigma \tilde{B} - 2\sigma - \tilde{B} - 2r,$$
 
$$Z^2 = K_S^2 - D^2 + 4\overline{g} = 8 - r - \sigma \tilde{B} + 4r + 2(\sigma \tilde{B} - 2\sigma - \tilde{B} - 2r),$$
 
$$Z^2 = 8 - r + (\sigma - 2)\tilde{B} - 4\sigma.$$

Eliminating  $\overline{g}$  and  $\tilde{B}$  from these, we obtain

$$\sigma Z^2 = (\sigma - 2)D^2 + (3\sigma - 8)r - 4\sigma(\sigma - 2).$$

In particular, if  $\sigma = 3$  then

$$3Z^2 = D^2 - 12$$
.

If  $\sigma = 4$  then

$$2Z^2 = D^2 + 2r - 16$$
.

If  $\sigma = 5$  then

$$5Z^2 = 3D^2 + 7r - 40.$$

## **21.2** Case $\sigma \geq 6$

Hereafter, we suppose that  $\sigma \geq 6$ . If the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$  then by Theorem  $|3Z-2D| \neq \emptyset$  and so

$$2\psi = 2(3Z^2 - 7\overline{g} + D^2) = (3Z - 2D) \cdot (2Z - D) \ge 0.$$

Therefore,

$$3Z^2 + D^2 \ge 7\overline{g} \ge -7.$$

Furthermore, define  $\Xi = 9Z^2 - 4D^2$ . Then from

$$3\psi = 3(3Z^2 + D^2 - 7\overline{g}) = 9Z^2 + 3D^2 - 21\overline{g} = \Xi - 7(3\overline{g} - D^2)$$

it follows that

$$\Xi = 3\psi + 7\omega$$

which is nonnegative when  $\sigma \geq 7$  as the type is not  $[6*8,1;2^r]$ . Hence, in this case,

$$9Z^2 > 4D^2$$
.

Moreover, if  $9Z^2-4D^2=0$  then  $\omega=0, \psi=0$ . Then  $3Z-2D\sim D+3K\sim 0$ . Furthermore, if  $\Xi=9Z^2-4D^2>0$  then  $\Xi=3,6,7\cdots$ .

## 21.3 Plane curves with only double points

Suppose that the type is  $[d; 2^r]$ . Then

$$Z^2 = (d-3)^2 - r, D^2 = d^2 - 4r.$$

Hence,

$$3Z^2 + D^2 + 7 = \frac{d^2 - 15d + 54}{2} + 7g, \quad 9Z^2 - 4D^2 = (d - 9)(5d - 9) + 7r.$$

If d = 8 then

$$3Z^2 + D^2 + 7 = -1 + 7g$$
,  $9Z^2 - 4D^2 = 7r - 31$ .

Therefore, if the type is  $[6*8,1;2^r]$  with r<5, then  $9Z^2-4D^2=7r-31<0$ .

## References

- [1] Encyclopaedia Britanica CD, 1999.
- [2] Coolidge J.L., A Treatise on Algebraic Plane Curves, Oxford Univ. Press., (1928).
- [3] Hartshorne R., Curves with high self-intersection on algebraic surfaces Publ.I.H.E.S. vol.36, (1970), 111-126.
- [4] Iitaka S., Algebraic Geometry, An Introduction of Birational Geometry of Algebraic Varieties, Springer Verlag. (1981).
- [5] Iitaka S., Basic structure of algebraic varieties, Advanced Studies of Pure Mathematics, 1, 1983, Algebraic Varieties and Analytic Varieties, Kinokuniya (1983) 303–316.
- [6] Iitaka S., On irreducible plane curves, Saitama Math. J. 1 (1983), 47–63.
- [7] Iitaka S., Birational geometry of plane curves ,Tokyo J. Math., 22(1999), pp289-321.
- [8] Kodaira K., On compact analytic surfaces II, Ann. of Math., 77(1963), 563–626
- [9] Matsuda O., On birational invariants of curves on rational surfaces, in Birational Geometry of Pairs of Curves and Surfaces, Gakushuin Univ., (1997), 1-130.
- [10] Matsuda O., On numerical types of algebraic curves on rational surfaces, Tokyo Journal of Mathematics vol.24, No.2, pp.359-367, December 2001.
- [11] Matsuda O., Birational classification of curves on irrational ruled surfaces, Tokyo Journal of Mathematics vol.25, No.1, pp.139-151, June 2002.
- [12] Nagata M., On rational surfaces I., Mem. Coll. Sci. Univ. Kyoto 32, 351-370 (1960).
- [13] Sakai F., Semi-Stable curves on algebraic surfaces and logarithmic pluricanonical maps, Math. Ann. 254, (1980),89-120.

[14] Semple, J.G. and Roth, L. Introduction to Algebraic Geometry, Cambridge University Press , 1949.